



1 Peter

translationNotes

v8

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 8

Published: 2017-07-05

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	9
Introduction to 1 Peter	9
1 Peter 01 General Notes	11
1 Peter 1:1-2	12
1 Peter 1:3-5	14
1 Peter 1:6-7	17
1 Peter 1:8-10	19
1 Peter 1:11-12	21
1 Peter 1:13-14	23
1 Peter 1:15-17	25
1 Peter 1:18-19	27
1 Peter 1:20-21	29
1 Peter 1:22-23	31
1 Peter 1:24-25	33
1 Peter 02 General Notes	35
1 Peter 2:1-3	36
1 Peter 2:4-5	38
1 Peter 2:6	40
1 Peter 2:7-8	42
1 Peter 2:9-10	44
1 Peter 2:11-12	46
1 Peter 2:13-17	48
1 Peter 2:18-20	50
1 Peter 2:21-23	52
1 Peter 2:24-25	54
1 Peter 03 General Notes	56
1 Peter 3:1-2	57
1 Peter 3:3-4	59
1 Peter 3:5-6	61
1 Peter 3:7	62
1 Peter 3:8-9	64
1 Peter 3:10-12	66
1 Peter 3:13-14	68
1 Peter 3:15-17	70
1 Peter 3:18-20	72
1 Peter 3:21-22	75
1 Peter 04 General Notes	77
1 Peter 4:1-2	78
1 Peter 4:3-6	80
1 Peter 4:7-9	82

Table of Contents

1 Peter 4:10-11	84
1 Peter 4:12-14	86
1 Peter 4:15-16	88
1 Peter 4:17-19	89
1 Peter 05 General Notes	92
1 Peter 5:1-4	93
1 Peter 5:5-7	96
1 Peter 5:8-9	98
1 Peter 5:10-11	100
1 Peter 5:12-14	102
translationQuestions	104
1 Peter 1	104
1 Peter 2	108
1 Peter 3	111
1 Peter 4	114
1 Peter 5	116
translationWords	118
Abraham, Abram	118
adversary, enemy	120
amen, truly	121
ancestor, father, forefather	123
angel, angels, archangel	125
apostle, apostles, apostleship	127
appoint, appoints, appointed	129
ark	130
Asia	131
authority, authorities	132
Babylon, Babylonian	134
baptize, baptized, baptism	136
believe, believes, believed, belief	138
beloved	140
blemish	141
bless, blessed, blessing	142
blood	144
body, bodies	146
born again, born of God, new birth	148
brother, brothers	150
call, calls, calling, called	152
chief	154
children, child	155
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	157
Christ, Messiah	159
Christian	161

clothe, clothed	163
commit, committed, commitment	164
compassion, compassionate	165
confidence, confident	166
conscience, consciences	168
cornerstone, cornerstones	169
create, creation, Creator	170
crown, to crown	172
darkness	174
death, die, dead	176
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	179
devour	181
disobey, disobedient, disobedience	182
disperse, dispersion	184
dominion	185
drunk, drunkard	186
elder	187
endure, endurance	188
envy, covet	189
everlasting, eternal, eternity	190
evil, wicked, wickedness	192
evildoer	194
exhort, exhortation	195
exile, the Exile	196
face	197
faith	199
faithful, faithfulness	201
fear, fears, afraid	203
fire	205
flesh	206
flock, herd	208
fool, fools, foolish, folly	209
foreigner, foreign, alien	211
foreknew, foreknowledge	212
forever	213
foundation, founded	215
free, freedom, liberty	217
Galatia	218
Gentile, Gentiles	219
gift, gifts	220
gird	222
glorify, glorifies	223
glory, glorious	225

Table of Contents

God	227
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father	230
godly, godliness	232
gold	233
good news, gospel	234
good, goodness	236
governor, govern, proconsul, government	238
grace, gracious	239
hand, right hand, to hand over	241
head	243
heal, cure	245
heart, hearts	247
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly	249
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	251
holy, holiness	253
honor, honors, to honor	255
house	256
household	258
humble, humbles, humbled, humility	259
hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy	260
idol, idolatrous	261
in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him	263
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	265
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	267
John Mark	270
joy, joyful	271
judge, judges, judgment, judgments	273
just, justice, justly	275
king	277
kiss	279
know, knowledge, make known	280
lamb, Lamb of God	282
last day, last days, latter days	284
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive	285
light	287
lion	289
loins	290
Lord	291
lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs	293
love, loves, loving, loved	295
manager, steward	298
meek, meekness	299
mercy, merciful	300

mighty, might	302
mind	304
name, names, named	305
nation	307
Noah	309
obey, obedient, obedience	310
patient, patience	312
peace, peaceful	313
people of God, my people	315
perfect	317
perish, perished, perishing, perishable	318
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas	319
Pontus	321
possess, possession	322
power, powers	324
praise	326
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed	328
preach	330
precious	332
priest, priests, priesthood	333
prison, prisoner, imprison	335
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	336
proud, pride, prideful	338
punish, punishment	340
pure, purify, purification	342
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose	344
receive	346
redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer	348
reject	350
rejoice	351
resurrection	352
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation	354
reverence, revere	356
reward	357
right hand	358
righteous, righteousness	360
royal	362
sacrifice, offering	363
salvation	365
sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification	366
Sarah, Sarai	367
Satan, devil, evil one	368
save, saves, saved, safe	370

Table of Contents

seed, semen	372
seek, sought	373
servant, slave, slavery	374
serve, service	376
set apart	378
shame, shameful, ashamed	379
sheep, ram, ewe	380
shepherd, to shepherd	382
Silas, Silvanus	384
silver	386
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning	387
slander, slanderer	390
son, sons	391
soul, souls	393
spirit, spirits, spiritual	395
strength, strengthen	397
stumble	399
subject, be subject to, in subjection to	400
submit, in submission	401
suffer, suffering	402
test, tests, tested	404
testimony, testify	406
tongue	408
trouble, troubles, troubled	410
true, truth, truths	412
turn, turn away, turn back	414
understand, understanding	416
ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness	417
unjust, unjustly, injustice	418
unrighteous, unrighteousness	419
water, waters	420
will of God	422
witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses	423
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures	425
word, words	427
works, deeds, work, acts	429
world, worldly	431
written	433
Zion, Mount Zion	434
translationAcademy	435
Abstract Nouns	435
Active or Passive	438
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	442

Doublet	446
Euphemism	448
Exclusive and Inclusive “We”	450
Forms of You	452
How to Translate Names	453
Idiom	457
Inclusive “We”	460
Merism	461
Metaphor	463
Metonymy	471
Parallelism	473
Personification	476
Reflexive Pronouns	478
Rhetorical Question	481
Simile	485
Symbolic Language	488
Synecdoche	491
Textual Variants	493

translationNotes

Introduction to 1 Peter

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 1 Peter

1. Introduction (1:1-2)
2. Praise for God's salvation of the believers (1:3-2:10)
3. Christian living (2:11-4:11)
4. Encouragement to persevere when suffering (4:12-5:11)
5. Closing (5:12-14)

What is the Book of 1 Peter about?

Peter states that he wrote this letter for the purpose of “encouraging you and testifying that this is the true grace of God” (5:12). He encourages Christians to persevere when there is suffering because the second coming of Christ is near. Peter also gives instructions about Christian relationships within one's family and with governmental authorities.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title “1 Peter” or “First Peter.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “The First Letter from Peter” or “The First Letter Peter Wrote.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of 1 Peter?

The Book of 1 Peter was written by the Apostle Peter. Peter begins his letter by saying who he is and to whom he is writing. He addresses the letter to all Christians. He refers several times to his readers as “strangers” because they are scattered in different countries.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

How were Christians treated in Rome?

This letter was probably written from Rome. It appears that when Peter wrote this letter, Christians were being badly persecuted. When Peter speaks of the church that is in Babylon (5:13), he may have been referring to Rome. Or perhaps he was referring to Christians everywhere “in exile,” that is, living in this world, away from the full reality of the kingdom of God where they would be in perfect peace.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural “you”

In this book, the word “I” refers to Peter, except for two places: [1 Peter 1:16](#) and [1 Peter 2:6](#). The word “you” is always plural and refers to the believers in the Dispersion. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#) and [Forms of You](#))

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of 1 Peter?

The following are the most significant textual issues in the Book of 1 Peter:

- “You made your souls pure by obedience to the truth for the purpose of sincere brotherly love, so love one another earnestly from the heart” (1:22). The ULB, UDB, and most other modern versions have this reading. Some older versions have, “You made your souls pure by obedience to the truth through the Spirit for the purpose of sincere brotherly love, so love one another earnestly from the heart.”

Translators are advised not to translate the expression “through the Spirit.” However, if older Bible versions that exist in their region have it, it is not wrong to translate it. If it is translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that it is probably not original to the Book of 1 Peter.

(See: [Textual Variants](#))

1 Peter 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 1:24-25, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Work of God in salvation

This chapter emphasizes the work of God in salvation. It reminds Christians of the great things only God could have done in order to bring them to a right relationship with himself. (See: [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#) and [salvation](#))

Eternity

This chapter contrasts living for things of this world, which will not last, with living for things that will matter eternally. It is also important to live with the expectation that Jesus will return soon. (See: [everlasting](#), [eternal](#), [eternity](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The use of paradox

A paradox is a seemingly absurd statement that appears to contradict itself. A paradox occurs in this chapter: “You rejoice in this, even though now it is necessary for you to feel sorrow in many different trials” (1:6).

“You are now”

Even though the statement, “You are now receiving for yourselves the result of your faith, the salvation of your souls,” is in the present tense, it refers to an action that has already happened. Therefore, it can be translated as a completed action. Some English translations do this and use a slightly different construction.

Links:

- [1 Peter 01:01 Notes](#)
- [1 Peter intro](#)

1 Peter 1:1-2

UDB:

¹ I, Peter, whom Jesus Christ made an apostle, am writing this letter to you who believe in him, you whom God has chosen to belong to himself. I am writing to you who live in the provinces of Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia, far away from your true home in heaven. ² God our Father chose you as he himself decided previously, and his Spirit has set you apart in order that you may obey Jesus Christ, and in order that his blood may make you acceptable to God. May God act very kindly to you, and may he make you live more and more peacefully.

ULB:

¹ Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the foreigners of the dispersion, the chosen ones, throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia. ² This is according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, set apart by the Spirit for obedience and for the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ. May grace be to you, and may your peace increase.

translationNotes

General Information:

Peter identifies himself as the writer and identifies and greets the believers to whom he is writing.

the foreigners of the dispersion

Peter speaks of his readers as people who live away from their homes in many different countries. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Cappadocia ... Bithynia

Along with the other places that Peter mentions, “Cappadocia” and “Bithynia” were Roman provinces located in what is now the country of Turkey.

the chosen ones ... according to the foreknowledge of God the Father

“the ones whom God the Father has chosen ... according to his own foreknowledge.” God has chosen them according to his own foreknowledge.

the foreknowledge of God the Father

The abstract noun “foreknowledge” can be translated with a verbal phrase. Possible meanings are 1) God had determined what would happen ahead of time. AT: “what God the Father decided previously” or 2) God knew what would happen ahead of time. AT: “what God the Father knew beforehand” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

for the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ

Here “the blood” refers to the death of Jesus. Just as Moses sprinkled blood on the people of Israel to symbolize their covenant with God, believers are in covenant with God because of Jesus’ death. (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#)).

May grace be to you, and may your peace increase

This passage speaks of grace as if it were an object that believers could possess, and of peace as if it were something that could increase in amount. Of course, grace is in reality the kind way God acts toward believers, and peace is how believers live in safety and joy with God. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas
- apostle, apostles, apostleship
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- disperse, dispersion
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- Pontus
- Galatia
- Asia
- foreknew, foreknowledge
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- obey, obedient, obedience
- blood
- grace, gracious
- peace, peaceful

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:3-5

UDB:

³ Praise God, who is the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! It is because he is kind to us and he has shown us great mercy, by causing us to experience the new birth that gives us a living hope, and we receive the new life because God raised Jesus Christ to life from the dead ones. ⁴ He has enabled us to expect to receive things that he has kept for us in heaven, things that will last forever. ⁵ God, by his mighty power, is guarding you as you trust in Jesus. He is guarding you so that he may, at the end of the time in which we now live, completely rescue you from Satan's power.

ULB:

³ May the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ be praised! In his great mercy, he has given us new birth to a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead ones. ⁴ This is for an inheritance that will not perish, will not become stained, and will not fade away. It is reserved in heaven for you. ⁵ You are protected by God's power through faith, for the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last times.

translationNotes

General Information:

Peter begins to talk about the believers' salvation and faith. Here he elaborates on a metaphor in which what God promises to do for all believers is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that he passes on to them.

our Lord Jesus Christ ... gave us a new birth

The words "our" and "us" refer to Peter and those to whom he is writing. (See: [Inclusive "We"](#))

he gave us a new birth

"he caused us to be born again"

for the confidence of an inheritance

You can translate this using a verb. AT: "so that we confidently expect to receive an inheritance" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

inheritance

Receiving what God has promised believers is spoken of as if it were inheriting property and wealth from a family member. (See: [Metaphor](#))

will not perish, will not become stained, and will not fade away

Peter uses three similar phrases to describe the inheritance as something that is perfect and eternal. (See: [Metaphor](#))

It is reserved in heaven for you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God is reserving it in heaven for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You are protected by God’s power

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God is protecting you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by God’s power

Here “power” is a way of saying that God is strong and able to protect believers. (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

through faith

Here “faith” refers to the fact that the believers trust in Christ. AT: “because of your faith” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

that is ready to be revealed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God is ready to reveal” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- God
- Lord
- bless, blessed, blessing
- mercy, merciful
- born again, born of God, new birth
- confidence, confident
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir
- resurrection
- death, die, dead
- perish, perished, perishing, perishable
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- power, powers
- faith
- salvation
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- last day, last days, latter days

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:6-7

UDB:

⁶ You rejoice because of what will happen then, but now you are grieving for a short time while you suffer many different hardships. God is allowing you to be tested, as precious metals are tested to see if they are pure. These trials that you are experiencing are necessary. ⁷ These hardships happen in order to prove that you really do trust in Jesus. This means more to God than all the gold in the world, which fire can destroy. Because you trust in Jesus, God will honor you very highly when Jesus Christ comes again.

ULB:

⁶ You are very glad about this, even though it is now necessary for you to feel sadness in many different troubles. ⁷ This is for the proving of your faith, which is more precious than gold that perishes, even though it is tested by fire. This happens so that your faith will be found to result in praise, glory, and honor at the revealing of Jesus Christ.

translationNotes

You are very glad about this

The word “this” refers to all the blessings that Peter mentions in the previous verses.

This is for the proving of your faith

In the same way in which fire refines gold, hardships test how well believers trust in Christ. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the proving of your faith

God wishes to test how well believers trust in Christ.

faith, which is more precious than gold that perishes, even though it is tested by fire

Faith is more valuable than gold, because gold does not last forever, even if it is refined in fire.

your faith will be found to result in praise, glory, and honor

Possible meanings are 1) that “God will honor you very highly” because of your faith or 2) that “your faith will bring praise, glory, and honor” to God.

at the revealing of Jesus Christ

“when Jesus Christ is revealed.” This refers to the return of Christ. This can also be expressed with an active form. AT: “when Jesus Christ appears to all people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)
- [faith](#)
- [precious](#)
- [gold](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [fire](#)
- [praise](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ You love Jesus, although you have not seen him. Although you do not see him now, you rejoice very much; ⁹ because you trust in him, God is saving you from the guilt of your sins.

¹⁰ Long ago prophets spoke messages that God had shown them about how he would one day save you. They investigated very carefully these things.

ULB:

⁸ You have not seen him, but you love him. You do not see him now, but you believe in him and rejoice with joy that is inexpressible and filled with glory. ⁹ You are now receiving for yourselves the result of your faith, the salvation of your souls. ¹⁰ The prophets searched and inquired carefully about this salvation, about the grace that would be yours.

translationNotes**unspeakable, glorious joy**

“wonderful joy that words cannot describe”

the salvation of your souls

Here the word “souls” refers to the whole person. The abstract noun “salvation” can be translated with a verb. AT: “your salvation” or “God saving you” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

salvation ... grace

These words present two ideas as if they were things or objects. In reality, “salvation” refers to the action of God saving us, or to what happens as a result. Similarly, “grace” refers to the kind way in which God deals with believers.

searched and inquired carefully

The words “inquired carefully” mean basically the same thing as “searched.” Together these words emphasize how hard the prophets tried to understand this salvation. AT: “examined very carefully” (See: [Doublet](#))

translationWords

- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [believe, believes, believed, belief](#)

- glory, glorious
- joy, joyful
- faith
- salvation
- soul, souls
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- grace, gracious

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ They wanted to know whom the Spirit of Christ that was in them was referring to. They also wanted to know what time he was talking about. This was because the Spirit was telling them beforehand that the Christ would suffer and die, and that glorious things would happen to him afterwards. ¹² God told them that it was not for their own sake that he was revealing these things to them, but that it was for your sake. They proclaimed them to you because the Holy Spirit whom God sent from heaven enabled them to do that. And even angels would like to know more about these truths about how God saves us.

ULB:

¹¹ They searched to know about whom and when the Spirit of Christ in them was speaking to them. This was happening as he was telling them in advance about the sufferings of Christ and the glorious things after that. ¹² It was revealed to them that they were not serving themselves, but you, when they spoke of the things that have now been told to you by those who preached the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven—things into which angels long to look.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Peter continues talking about the prophets' search for salvation.

They searched to know

“They tried to determine”

the Spirit of Christ

This is a reference to the Holy Spirit.

It was revealed to them

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God revealed to the prophets” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

into which angels long to look

“that angels want to understand”

translationWords

- know, knowledge, make known
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- Christ, Messiah
- suffer, suffering
- glory, glorious
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- serve, service
- good news, gospel
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- angel, angels, archangel

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Therefore, prepare your minds to obey God. What I mean is that you should discipline your minds. Be confident that you will receive the good things that God will kindly do for you when Jesus Christ returns from heaven. ¹⁴ And because you should obey your heavenly Father, just as children ought to obey their fathers here on earth, do not do the evil deeds that you previously wished to do, when you did not know the truth about God.

ULB:

¹³ So gird up the loins of your mind. Be sober. Put your hope fully on the grace that will be brought to you when Jesus Christ is revealed. ¹⁴ As obedient children, do not conform yourselves to the desires that you followed when you were ignorant.

translationNotes

So gird

“Because of this, gird.” Peter uses the word “So” here to refer back to everything he has said about salvation, their faith, and the Spirit of Christ giving revelations to the prophets.

gird up the loins of your mind

Girding up the loins refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease. AT: “get your minds ready” (See: [Idiom](#))

Be sober

Here the word “sober” refers to mental clarity and alertness. AT: “Control your thoughts” or “Be careful about what you think” (See: [Idiom](#))

the grace that will be brought to you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the grace that God will bring to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the grace that will be brought to you

Here God’s way of dealing kindly with believers is spoken of as if it were an object that he will bring to them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

when Jesus Christ is revealed

This refers to when Christ returns. This can also be expressed with an active form. See how you translated this in [1 Peter 1:7](#). AT: “when Jesus Christ appears to all people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

do not conform yourselves to the desires

“do not desire the same things” AT: “do not live to gratify the desires” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [gird](#)
- [loins](#)
- [mind](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)
- [children, child](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Instead, just like God, the one who chose you to belong to him, is holy, you also must be holy in everything that you do. ¹⁶ Be holy, because it is written in the scriptures that God said, “You must be holy because I am holy.”

¹⁷ God is the one who judges what each one does, and he does this very fairly. Since you call him ‘Father,’ behave in a right way while you are living here on earth. You are like people whom others have driven from their homes, because you are living away from heaven, your true home.

ULB:

¹⁵ But as the one who called you is holy, you, too, be holy in your whole behavior. ¹⁶ For it is written, “Be holy, because I am holy.” ¹⁷ So if you call “Father” the one who judges impartially and according to each person’s work, go through the time of your journey in reverence.

translationNotes**For it is written**

This refers to God’s message in the scripture. This can be stated in active form. AT: “For as God said” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Be holy, because I am holy

Here the word “I” refers to God.

go through the time of your journey

Peter speaks of his readers as if they were people living in a foreign land away from their home. AT: “use the time you are living away from your true home” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- call, calls, calling, called
- holy, holiness
- written
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- works, deeds, work, acts
- reverence, revere

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Live reverently because you know that it was not with things like gold and silver—things that will not last forever—that God bought you, so you could stop behaving foolishly, as you learned to do from your ancestors. ¹⁹ Instead, it was with the precious blood of Christ that flowed from his body when he died that God bought you. Christ was a like the lambs that the Jewish priests sacrificed: Perfect, without any blemishes or spots.

ULB:

¹⁸ You know that it was not with perishable silver or gold that you have been redeemed from the foolish behavior that you learned from your fathers. ¹⁹ Instead, you have been redeemed with the precious blood of Christ, who was like a lamb without blemish or spot.

translationNotes**you have been redeemed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has redeemed you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the precious blood of Christ

Here “blood” stands for Christ’s death on the cross. (See: [Metonymy](#))

like a lamb without blemish or spot

Jesus died as a sacrifice so that God would forgive people’s sins. AT: “like the lambs without blemish or spot that the Jewish priests sacrificed” (See: [Simile](#))

without blemish or spot

Peter expresses the same idea in two different ways to emphasize Christ’s purity. AT: “with no imperfections” (See: [Doublet](#))

translationWords

- [perish, perished, perishing, perishable](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer](#)
- [fool, fools, foolish, folly](#)

- ancestor, father, forefather
- blood
- Christ, Messiah
- lamb, Lamb of God
- blemish

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ God chose him to do this before he created the world. But it was not until now, when the world will soon end, that God revealed him to you. ²¹ Because of what Christ has done, you are trusting in God, who caused him to become alive again after he died, and who greatly honored him. As a result, God is the one in whom you are trusting and expecting that he will do great things for you.

ULB:

²⁰ Christ was chosen before the foundation of the world, but now he has been revealed to you in these last times. ²¹ Through him you believe in God, who raised him from the dead ones and gave him glory, so that your faith and hope would be in God.

translationNotes**Christ was chosen**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God chose Christ” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

before the foundation of the world

You can translate this with a verbal phrase. AT: “before God created the world” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

he has been revealed to you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has revealed him to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he has been revealed to you

Peter does not mean that his readers actually saw Christ, but that they learned the truth about him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

and gave him glory

“and glorified him” or “and showed that he is glorious” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)

- world, worldly
- reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation
- last day, last days, latter days
- believe, believes, believed, belief
- God
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- death, die, dead
- glory, glorious
- faith
- confidence, confident

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:22-23

UDB:

²² Because you have obeyed the truth about God and have allowed him to make you pure and to love our fellow believers, continue to love each other earnestly and sincerely. ²³ I ask you to do this, because you now are living a new life. It was not by means of something that will perish that you received this new life. Instead, it was by means of something that will last forever: The promises of God, which you have believed.

ULB:

²² You made your souls pure by obedience to the truth. This was for the purpose of sincere brotherly love; so love one another earnestly from the heart. ^[1] ²³ You have been born again, not from perishable seed, but from imperishable seed, through the living and remaining word of God.

1:22 ^[1] Some older versions read, *You made your souls pure by obedience to the truth through the Spirit ...*

translationNotes

You made your souls pure

Here the word “soul” refers to the whole person. AT: “You made yourselves pure” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

pure

Here the idea of cleanliness refers to being acceptable to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

by obedience to the truth

You can translate this using a verbal phrase. AT: “by obeying the truth” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

brotherly love

This refers to love between fellow believers.

love one another earnestly from the heart

Here the word “heart” refers to the seat of the emotions and indicates that they are to love completely. AT: “love one another earnestly and completely” or “love one another earnestly and wholeheartedly” (See: [Idiom](#))

born again, not from perishable seed, but from imperishable seed

Possible meanings are that Peter speaks of the word of God either 1) as the seed of a plant that grows and produces new life in believers or 2) as the tiny cells inside a man or woman that combine to cause a baby to grow inside the woman. (See: [Metaphor](#))

imperishable

“not perishable” or “not permanent”

through the living and remaining word of God

Peter speaks of God’s word as if it were alive forever. In reality, it is God who lives forever, and whose commands and promises last eternally. (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [soul, souls](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [born again, born of God, new birth](#)
- [perish, perished, perishing, perishable](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 1:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ We know that this is true because, as the prophet Isaiah wrote,

”All people will perish like grass perishes. And all the greatness that people have will not last forever,

like the flowers in the grass do not last long.

The grass withers and the flowers die,

²⁵ but God’s message endures forever.”

This message that endures is the message about Christ that we proclaimed to you.

ULB:

²⁴ For, ”All flesh is like grass,

and all its glory is like the wild flower of the grass.

The grass dries up, and the flower falls off,

²⁵ but the word of the Lord remains forever.”

This is the good news that was announced to you.

translationNotes**General Information:**

In these verses Peter quotes a passage from the prophet Isaiah relating to what he has just said about them being born of imperishable seed.

All flesh is like grass, and all its

The word “flesh” refers to humanity. The prophet Isaiah compares humanity to grass that grows and dies quickly. AT: “All people will die like grass dies, and all their” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Simile](#))

glory is like the wild flower of the grass

Here the word “glory” refers to beauty or goodness. Isaiah compares the things that people consider to be good or beautiful about humanity to flowers that die quickly. AT: “goodness soon stops, just as flowers soon die” (See: [Simile](#))

This is the good news

Here the word “This” refers to “the word of the Lord.”

the good news that was announced

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the good news that we announced” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [flesh](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [forever](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 02 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 2:6, 7, 8, 10, 22, which are quotations from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Stones

Stones are used in Scripture to describe the church. Jesus is the cornerstone. The apostles and prophets are the foundation. In this chapter, Christians are the stones used to continue to build the church.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Milk and solid food

This is an image used to describe maturity in Christ. It compares the immature Christian to a baby who is only able to drink milk. Immature Christians are not mature enough to handle solid foods, which are the more complex teachings about Jesus. Instead, they have chosen not to grow so they remain like babies who only drink milk, the simpler and more basic teachings about Jesus. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“You are now the people of God”

Some scholars believe this indicates the church has replaced Israel in the plans of God. Other scholars believe there are more than one “people of God.” (See: [people of God, my people](#)).

Links:

- [1 Peter 02:01 Notes](#)

1 Peter 2:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Therefore, do not act maliciously in any way or deceive others. Do not be hypocrites, and do not envy others. Do not ever speak evil about anyone untruthfully. ² Just as newborn babies long for their mothers' pure milk, you should desire to learn true things from God, so that by learning it you may become like adults in trusting him. You must do this until the time when God sets you completely free from all the evil in this world. ³ Also, you must do this because you have experienced that the Lord acts very kindly toward you.

ULB:

¹ Therefore put aside all evil, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all slander. ² As newborn infants, long for pure spiritual milk, so that through it you may grow in salvation, ³ if you have tasted that the Lord is kind.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Peter continues teaching his readers about holiness and obedience.

Therefore put aside all evil, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all slander

These sinful actions are spoken of as if they were objects that people could throw away. The word "Therefore" here refers back to everything that Peter has said about being holy and obedient. AT: "So then, get rid of everything that is evil, and hypocrisy, and envy, and all slander" or "So then, stop being evil, or being deceptive, or being hypocritical, or envying, or slandering" (See: [Metaphor](#))

As newborn infants, long for pure spiritual milk

Peter speaks of his readers as if they were babies. Babies requires very pure food, which they can digest easily. In the same way, believers need pure teaching from God's word. AT: "Just as babies long for their mother's breast milk, so you must yearn for pure spiritual milk" (See: [Metaphor](#))

long for

"desire intensely" or "yearn for"

pure spiritual milk

Peter speaks of the word of God as if it were spiritual milk that nourished children. (See: [Metaphor](#))

you may grow in salvation

Here the word “salvation” refers to when God brings the salvation of his people to completion when Jesus returns (see [1 Peter 1:5](#)). They were to increasingly act in ways that were consistent with this salvation. You can translate this with a verbal phrase. AT: “you may grow up spiritually until God saves you completely” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

grow

Peter speaks of believers advancing in knowledge of God and faithfulness to him as if they were children growing up. (See: [Metaphor](#))

if you have tasted that the Lord is kind

Here to taste means to experience something personally. AT: “if you have experienced the Lord’s kindness toward you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy](#)
- [envy, covet](#)
- [slander, slanderer](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [Lord](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Come to the Lord Jesus. He is like the most important stone in the foundation of a building, but he is living, not lifeless like a stone. Many people rejected him, but God chose him and considers him to be very valuable. ⁵ And like men build houses with stones, God is joining you together like a building in which his Spirit lives. He is doing this in order that you—like the priests who offer sacrifices at the altar, might do things that please God because Jesus Christ has died for you.

ULB:

⁴ Come to him who is a living stone that has been rejected by people, but that has been chosen by God as valuable to him. ⁵ You also are like living stones that are being built up to be a spiritual house, in order to be a holy priesthood that offers the spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Peter begins to tell a metaphor about Jesus and the believers being living stones. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Come to him who is a living stone

Peter speaks of Jesus as if he were a stone in a building. AT: “Come to him who is like a stone in a building, but alive, not a dead stone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who is a living stone

Possible meanings are 1) “who is a stone that is alive” or 2) “who is a stone that gives life.”

that has been rejected by people

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that people have rejected” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

but that has been chosen by God

This can be stated in active form. AT: “but that God has chosen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You also are ... being built up to be a spiritual house

Just as people used stones to build the temple in the Old Testament, believers are the materials that God is using to build a house in which he will live. (See: [Metaphor](#))

You also are like living stones

Peter compares his readers to stones that are alive. (See: [Simile](#))

that are being built up to be a spiritual house

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that God is building into a spiritual house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a holy priesthood that offers the spiritual sacrifices

Here the position of priesthood stands for the priests who fulfill its duties. (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [reject](#)
- [chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#)
- [God](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [house](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:6**UDB:**

⁶ What the scriptures say show us that this is true: “I am placing in Jerusalem someone who is like a very valuable stone, the most important stone in the building, and those who believe in him will never become ashamed.”

ULB:

⁶ Scripture contains this:

”See, I am laying in Zion a cornerstone,
chosen and valuable.

Whoever believes in him will not be ashamed.”

translationNotes**Scripture contains this**

The scriptures are spoken of as if they were a container. This passage refers to the words that a person reads in scripture. AT: “This is what a prophet wrote in the scriptures long ago” (See: [Metaphor](#))

See

The word “see” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

a cornerstone, chosen and valuable

God is the one who chose the stone. AT: “a most important cornerstone, which I have chosen” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a cornerstone

The prophet speaks of the Messiah as the most important stone in a building. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Zion, Mount Zion
- cornerstone, cornerstones
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

- [believe, believes, believed, belief](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Therefore, God will honor you who believe in Jesus. But those who refuse to believe in him are like the builders that the scriptures talk about: “The stone that the builders rejected has become the most important stone in the building.”

⁸ It is also written in the scriptures:

”He will be like a stone that causes people to stumble,
and like a rock that people trip over.

Just as people are injured when they stumble over a rock,
people who disobey God’s message injure themselves;
that is what God determined would happen to them.”

ULB:

⁷ The honor then is for you who believe. But,
”the stone that was rejected by the builders,
this has become the head of the corner”—

⁸ and,

”A stone of stumbling
and a rock that makes them fall.”

They stumble because they disobey the word—which is what they were destined to do.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Peter continues quoting from the scriptures.

the stone that was rejected ... has become the head of the corner

This is a metaphor that means people, like builders, rejected Jesus, but God has made him the most important stone in a building. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the stone that was rejected by the builders

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the stone that the builders rejected” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the head of the corner

This refers to the most important stone in a building and means basically the same thing as “cornerstone” in [1 Peter 2:6](#).

a stone of stumbling and a rock of stumbling

These two phrases share similar meanings. Together they emphasize that people will take offense at this “stone,” which refers to Jesus. AT: “a stone or a rock over which people will stumble” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

stumble, disobeying the word

Here “the word” refers to the gospel message. To disobey means that they do not believe. AT: “stumble because they are not believing the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for which they were also destined

This can be stated in active form. AT: “for which God also destined them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [believe, believes, believed, belief](#)
- [reject](#)
- [head](#)
- [stumble](#)
- [disobey, disobedient, disobedience](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ But you are people whom God has chosen to belong to him. You are a group that worship God like priests, and you rule with God like kings. You are a people group that belongs to God, so that you might proclaim the wonderful things he has done. He has called you from your former ways, when you were ignorant of his truth, and he has made you understand the marvelous true things about him. ¹⁰ What the scriptures say is true about you:

”Formerly, you were no people group at all,
 But now you are God’s people group.
 At one time God had not acted mercifully toward you,
 But now he has acted mercifully toward you.”

ULB:

⁹ But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for God’s possession, so that you would announce the wonderful actions of the one who called you out from darkness into his marvelous light.

¹⁰ Once you were not a people,
 but now you are the people of God.
 You did not receive mercy,
 but now you have received mercy.

translationNotes**General Information:**

In verse 10 Peter quotes a verse from the prophet Hosea. Some modern versions do not format this as a quote, which is also acceptable.

a chosen people

You can clarify that God is the one who has chosen them. AT: “a people whom God has chosen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a royal priesthood

Possible meanings are 1) “a group of kings and a group of priests” or 2) “a group of priests who serve the king.”

a people for God's possession

“a people who belong to God”

who called you out

“who called you to come out”

from darkness into his marvelous light

Here “darkness” refers to their condition as sinful people who did not know God, and “light” refers to their condition as people who do know God and practice righteousness. AT: “from a life of sin and ignorance of God to a life of knowing and pleasing him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- royal
- priest, priests, priesthood
- holy, holiness
- nation
- people of God, my people
- possess, possession
- call, calls, calling, called
- darkness
- light
- receive
- mercy, merciful

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ You people whom I love, I urge you to think about this: You are like foreigners whose real home is in heaven. So you should not do the sinful things you used to want to do, because if you do them, you will not be able to live well with God. ¹² Keep behaving in a good way among those who do not know God. If you do that, although they may say that you do what is evil, they will see that you are doing good things, and at the time when God comes to judge everyone, they will honor him.

ULB:

¹¹ Beloved, I call on you as foreigners and exiles to abstain from fleshly desires, which make war against your soul. ¹² You should have good behavior among the Gentiles, so that, if they speak about you as having done evil things, they may observe your good works and praise God on the day of his coming.

translationNotes

General Information:

Peter begins to talk about how to live Christian lives.

foreigners and exiles

These two words mean basically the same thing. Peter speaks of his readers as people who are living in foreign lands away from their home. See how you translated “foreigners” in [1 Peter 1:1](#). (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

to abstain from fleshly desires

Here the idea of flesh refers to the sinful nature of humanity in this fallen world. AT: “to not to give in to sinful desires” (See: [Metaphor](#))

make war against your soul

Here the word “soul” refers to a person’s spiritual life. Peter speaks of sinful desires as soldiers that are trying to destroy the spiritual life of believers. AT: “seek to destroy your spiritual life” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

You should have good behavior

The abstract noun “behavior” can be translated with a verb. AT: “You should behave well” or “You should behave in a good way” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

if they speak about you as

“if they accuse you of”

they may observe your good works

The abstract noun “works” can be translated with a verb. AT: “they may observe the good things that you do” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

on the day of his coming

“on the day when he comes.” This refers to the day when God will judge all people. AT: “when he comes to judge everyone” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [beloved](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [soul, souls](#)
- [Gentile, Gentiles](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [praise](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:13-17**UDB:**

¹³ Because you wish to honor the Lord Jesus, obey everyone who has proper authority. This includes the king, because he has the greatest power. ¹⁴ It also includes governors, because God sends them to punish those who do what is wrong and to praise those who do what is right. ¹⁵ What God wants is for you to do good. If you do that, you will cause foolish people who do not know God to be unable to say that you have done wrong. ¹⁶ Behave as though you were free from having to obey any master, but do not think that you can do evil because of that. Instead, behave as servants of God should. ¹⁷ Act respectfully toward everyone. Love all your fellow believers. Honor God, and honor the king.

ULB:

¹³ Obey every human authority for the Lord's sake. Obey both the king as supreme, ¹⁴ and also the governors, who are sent to punish evildoers and to praise those who do good. ¹⁵ For this is God's will, that in doing good you silence the ignorant talk of foolish people. ¹⁶ As free people, do not use your freedom as a covering for wickedness, but be like servants of God. ¹⁷ Honor all people. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honor the king.

translationNotes**for the Lord's sake**

Possible meanings are 1) that by obeying human authorities, they are obeying the Lord who established those authorities or 2) that by obeying human authorities, they will honor Jesus who also obeyed human authorities.

the king as supreme

“the king as the highest human authority”

who are sent to punish

This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom the king has sent to punish” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in doing good you silence the ignorant talk of foolish people

“by doing good you stop foolish people from speaking about things that they do not know”

as a covering for wickedness

Peter speaks of their condition as free people as something that they should not use to hide sinful behavior. AT: “as an excuse to do wicked things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the brotherhood

This refers to all Christian believers.

translationWords

- obey, obedient, obedience
- authority, authorities
- Lord
- king
- governor, govern, proconsul, government
- punish, punishment
- evildoer
- praise
- good, goodness
- will of God
- fool, fools, foolish, folly
- free, freedom, liberty
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- servant, slave, slavery
- honor, honors, to honor
- love, loves, loving, loved
- brother, brothers
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ You slaves who are believers, submit yourselves to your masters and completely respect them. Submit yourselves not only to those who act in a good and kind way toward you, but also submit yourselves to those who act in a harsh way toward you. ¹⁹ You should do that because God is pleased with those who know what he wants and obey him, and who, for this reason, accept to suffer pain because their masters treat them unjustly. ²⁰ God will certainly not be pleased with you if you do something that is wrong and then they beat you for that. But if you do what is good and still suffer harm, you are suffering for doing what is good. If you endure that, God will praise you.

ULB:

¹⁸ Servants, be subject to your masters with all respect. Be subject not only to the good and gentle masters, but also to the malicious ones. ¹⁹ For it is praiseworthy if anyone endures pain while suffering injustice because of his awareness of God. ²⁰ For how much credit is there if you sin and then endure while being punished? But if you have done good and then you suffer while being punished, this is worthy of praise from God.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Peter begins to speak specifically to people who are servants in people's houses.

the good and gentle masters

Here the words "good" and "gentle" share similar meanings and emphasize that such masters treat their servants kindly. AT: "the very kind masters" (See: [Doublet](#))

the malicious ones

"the cruel ones" or "the mean ones"

it is praiseworthy

"it is deserving of praise" or "it is pleasing to God"

endures pain ... because of his awareness of God

Possible meanings of the original passage are 1) that this person accepts suffering because he knows he is obeying God or 2) that this person is able to endure unjust punishment because he knows that God knows how he is suffering.

For how much credit is there ... while being punished?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that there is nothing praiseworthy about suffering for doing something wrong. AT: “For there is no credit ... while being punished.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

while being punished

This can be stated in active form. AT: “while someone punishes you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you suffer while being punished

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you suffer while someone punishes you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [subject, be subject to, in subjection to](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [endure, endurance](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [unjust, unjustly, injustice](#)
- [God](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ One of the reasons why God chose you is that you might suffer. When Christ suffered for you he became an example for you, in order that you would imitate what he did. ²² Remember how Christ conducted himself,

He never sinned,

And he never said anything to deceive people.

²³ When people insulted him, he did not insult them in return.

When people caused him to suffer, he did not threaten to get revenge.

Instead, he decided to let God, who always judges justly, prove that he was innocent.

ULB:

²¹ For it is to this that you were called, because Christ also suffered for you. He left an example for you to follow in his steps.

²² "He committed no sin,

neither was any deceit found in his mouth."

²³ When he was reviled, he did not revile back. When he suffered, he did not threaten back, but he gave himself to the one who judges justly.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Peter continues speaking to people who are servants in people's houses.

it is to this that you were called

Here the word "this" refers to believers enduring while suffering for doing good, as Peter has just described. This can be stated in active form. AT: "God has called you to this" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for you to follow in his steps

"so that you would follow his footprints." Peter speaks of following Jesus' example in the way that they suffer as if one were walking on the same path that Jesus had taken. AT: "so that you would imitate his behavior" (See: [Metaphor](#))

neither was any deceit found in his mouth

This can be stated in active form. AT: “neither did anyone find deceit in his mouth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

neither was any deceit found in his mouth

Here “deceit” refers to words that a person speaks that are intended to deceive other people. AT: “neither did he speak any lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

When he was reviled, he did not revile back

To “revile” someone is to speak abusively to another person. This can be stated in active form. AT: “When people insulted him, he did not insult them back” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

gave himself to the one who judges justly

“he entrusted himself to the one who judges justly.” This means that he trusted God to take away his shame, which had been put on him by those who treated him harshly.

translationWords

- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [commit, committed, commitment](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 2:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ He himself endured the punishment for our sins in his body when he died on the cross, in order that we would stop sinning and start living rightly.

It is because they wounded him that God has healed you. ²⁵ Truly you were like sheep that had become lost, but now you have returned to Jesus, who cares for you as a shepherd cares for his sheep.

ULB:

²⁴ He himself carried our sins in his body to the tree, so that we would have no more part in sin, and so that we would live for righteousness. By his bruises you have been healed. ²⁵ All of you had been wandering away like lost sheep, but now you have returned to the shepherd and guardian of your souls.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Peter continues talking about Jesus Christ. He is still speaking to people who are servants.

He himself

This refers to Jesus, with emphasis. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

carried our sins in his body to the tree

Here “carried our sins” means he suffered the punishment for our sins. AT: “suffered the punishment for our sins in his body on the tree” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the tree

This is a reference to the cross on which Jesus died, which was made of wood. (See: [Metonymy](#))

By his bruises you have been healed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God has healed you because people bruised him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you had been wandering away like lost sheep

Peter speaks about his readers before they believed in Christ as if they had been similar to lost sheep wandering around aimlessly. (See: [Simile](#))

the shepherd and guardian of your souls

Peter speaks of Jesus as if he were a shepherd. Just as a shepherd protects his sheep, Jesus protects those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [body, bodies](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [heal, cure](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [soul, souls](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 03 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 3:10-12, which is a reference to the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

“Outward ornaments”

These were signs of a beautiful woman in ancient Israel. They are contrasted with “inner” beauty or godly character. Many cultures have different standards of external beauty for women. (See: [godly, godliness](#))

Unity

The apostles placed a great value on unity in the local church. This chapter encourages unity and peace in the church.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Synecdoche

In the referenced verses, the psalmist uses several synecdoches to describe God. This is because God is indescribable and often requires images and other figures of speech for us to understand him. It is also common in poetry to use different figures of speech. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Wives, submit to your husbands

Scholars are divided over how to understand this passage in light of its historical and cultural context. Some scholars have the belief that men and women are perfectly equal in all things (known as egalitarianism). Other scholars have the belief that men and women were created to serve in distinctly different roles in marriage and the church (known as complementarianism). How one understands this issue will likely affect how this passage is translated.

Links:

- [1 Peter 03:01 Notes](#)

1 Peter 3:1-2**UDB:**

¹ You women believers should submit yourselves to your husbands. Do this in order that if any of them do not believe the message about Christ, they may become believers without your having to say anything to them. ² They will believe in Christ when they see that you honor them and that you are completely faithful to them.

ULB:

¹ In this way, you who are wives should submit to your own husbands. Do this so even if some men are disobedient to the word, they may be won without a word, through their wives' behavior. ² For they will have seen your sincere behavior with respect.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Peter begins to speak specifically to women who are wives.

In this way, you who are wives should submit to your own husbands

Just as believers are to “Obey every human authority” (1 Peter 2:13) and servants are to “be subject” to their masters (1 Peter 2:18), wives are to submit to their husbands. The words “Obey,” “be subject,” and “submit” translate the same word.

some men are disobedient to the word

Here “the word” refers to the gospel message. To disobey means that they do not believe. See how you translated a similar phrase in 1 Peter 2:8. AT: “some men do not believe the message about Jesus” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they may be won

“they may be persuaded to believe in Christ.” This means that the unbelieving husbands will become believers. This can be stated in active form. AT: “they may become believers” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

without a word

“without the wife saying a word.” Here “a word” refers to any word that the wife might speak about Jesus.

they will have seen your sincere behavior with respect

The abstract noun “behavior” can be translated with a verb. AT: “they will have seen that you behave sincerely and respectfully” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

your sincere behavior with respect

Possible meanings are 1) “your sincere behavior toward them and the way that you honor them” or 2) “your pure behavior toward them and the way that you honor God.”

translationWords

- [submit, in submission](#)
- [disobey, disobedient, disobedience](#)
- [word, words](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:3-4

UDB:

³ Do not try to do this by decorating the outside of your bodies, such as having fancy hair arrangements or wearing gold jewelry and fine clothes. ⁴ Instead, make your inner beings beautiful in a way that will not fade. I mean, have a humble and quiet attitude, which is something that God considers to be very valuable.

ULB:

³ Let it be done not with outward ornaments such as braided hair, jewels of gold, or fashionable clothing. ⁴ Instead, let it be done with the inner person of the heart, and the lasting beauty of a gentle and quiet spirit, which is precious before God.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Peter continues speaking to women who are wives.

Let it be done

The word “it” refers to the wives’ submission to and conduct towards their husbands.

the inner person of the heart

Here the words “inner person” and “heart” refer to the inward character and personality of a person. AT: “what you really are on the inside” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

a gentle and quiet spirit

“a gentle and peaceful attitude.” Here the word “quiet” means “peaceful” or “calm.” The word “spirit” refers to a person’s attitude or temperament.

which is precious before God

Peter speaks of God’s opinion of a person as if that person were standing directly in front of him. AT: “which God considers to be precious” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- gold
- heart, hearts
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- precious
- God

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:5-6

UDB:

⁵ The women who honored God, who lived long ago, made themselves beautiful in this way. They trusted in God and obeyed their husbands. ⁶ Sarah, for example, obeyed her husband Abraham and called him master. God will consider you to be her daughters if you do what is right and are not afraid of what your husbands or anyone else may do to you because you are believers.

ULB:

⁵ For this is how holy women long ago who hoped in God adorned themselves, by submitting to their husbands. ⁶ In this way Sarah obeyed Abraham and called him her lord. You are now her children if you do what is good and if you are not afraid of trouble.

translationNotes

called him her lord

said that he was her lord, that is, her master

You are now her children

Peter says that believing women who act as Sarah acted can be thought of as if they were her actual children. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [confidence, confident](#)
- [Sarah, Sarai](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:7

UDB:

⁷ You men who are believers, just as your wives should respect you, you should conduct your lives in an appropriate way with them. Treat them respectfully, realizing that they are usually weaker than you are. But also realize that God is making them to live forever, just like you. Do this so that nothing will hinder you from praying.

ULB:

⁷ In the same way, you husbands should live with your wives according to understanding, as with a weaker container, a woman. You should give them honor as fellow heirs of the gift of life. Do this so that your prayers will not be hindered.

translationNotes

General Information:

Peter begins to speak specifically to men who are husbands.

In the same way

This refers back to how Sarah and other godly women obeyed their husbands in [1 Peter 3:5-6](#).

wives according to understanding, as with a weaker container, a woman

Peter speaks of women as if they were containers, as men are sometimes also spoken of. The abstract noun “understanding” can also be translated as a verb. AT: “wives, understanding that the woman is the weaker partner” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

give them honor as fellow heirs of the gift of life

You can translate this using verbal phrases. AT: “honor them because they will also receive the eternal life that God gives” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

heirs of the gift of life

Eternal life is often spoken of as if it were something that people inherit. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Do this

Here “this” refers to the ways husbands should treat their wives. AT: “Live with your wives in this way” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that your prayers will not be hindered

To “hinder” is to prevent something from happening. This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that nothing will hinder your prayers” or “so that nothing will keep you from praying as you should” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [understand, understanding](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ To end this part of my letter, I say to all of you, agree with each other in what you think. Be sympathetic toward each other. Love each other as members of the same family should. Act compassionately toward each other. Be humble. ⁹ When people do evil things to you or insult you, do not do the same to them. Instead, ask God to help them, because that is what you have been chosen by God to do, in order that he may help you.

ULB:

⁸ Finally, all of you, be likeminded, compassionate, loving as brothers, tenderhearted, and humble. ⁹ Do not pay back evil for evil or insult for insult. On the contrary, continue to bless, because for this you were called, that you might inherit a blessing.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Peter begins to speak again to all of the believers.

be likeminded

“have the same opinion and be” or “have the same attitude and be”

tenderhearted

This refers to having an intense affection for other people.

Do not pay back evil for evil or insult for insult

Peter speaks of responding to the actions of another person as remitting payment for those actions.

AT: “Do not do evil to someone who does evil to you or insult someone who insults you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

continue to bless

You can clarify the object of blessing. AT: “continue to bless those who do evil to you or insult you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for this you were called

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God called you for this” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that you might inherit a blessing

Peter speaks of receiving God's blessing as receiving an inheritance. AT: "that you might receive God's blessing as your permanent possession" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ Consider what the psalmist wrote about the proper way of conducting our lives:

”As for those who want to enjoy life and for good things to happen to them,
they must not say what is evil or speak words that deceive others.

¹¹ They must continually refuse to do evil, and do what is good instead.

They must try to help people act peacefully toward each other;

they must earnestly urge people to act in a peaceful way,

¹² because the Lord accepts what righteous people do.

He listens to righteous people when they pray, and he answers them.

But he rejects those who do evil.”

ULB:

¹⁰ ”The one who wants to love life and see good days should stop his tongue from evil and his lips from speaking deceit.

¹¹ Let him turn away from what is bad and do what is good. Let him seek peace and pursue it.

¹² The eyes of the Lord see the righteous, and his ears hear their requests. But the face of the Lord is against those who do evil.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

In these verses Peter quotes from the Psalms. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to love life and see good days

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the desire to have a good life. (See: [Parallelism](#))

see good days

Here experiencing good things is spoken of as seeing good things. The word “days” refers to one’s lifetime. AT: “experience good things during life” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

stop his tongue from evil and his lips from speaking deceit

The words “tongue” and “lips” refer to the person who is speaking. These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the command not to lie. AT: “stop saying evil and deceitful things” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

The eyes of the Lord see the righteous

The word “eyes” refers to the Lord’s ability to know things. The Lord’s approval of the righteous is spoken of as his seeing them. AT: “The Lord sees the righteous” or “The Lord approves of the righteous” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

his ears hear their requests

The word “ears” refers to the Lord’s awareness of what people say. That the Lord hears their requests implies that he also responds to them. AT: “he hears their requests” or “he grants their requests” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the face of the Lord is against

The word “face” refers to the Lord’s will to oppose his enemies. Opposing someone is spoken of as setting one’s face against that person. AT: “the Lord opposes” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- tongue
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive
- turn, turn away, turn back
- good, goodness
- seek, sought
- peace, peaceful
- Lord
- righteous, righteousness
- face

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Who is going to harm you if you are making every effort to do what is good? ¹⁴ But even if you suffer because you did what was right, God will bless you. “Do not be afraid of the things that other fear; and do not be troubled when people treat you badly.”

ULB:

¹³ Who is the one who will harm you if you are eager to do what is good? ¹⁴ But if you suffer because of righteousness, you are blessed. Do not fear what they fear. Do not be troubled.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Peter continues teaching the believers how to live Christian lives.

Who is the one who will harm you if you are eager to do what is good?

Peter asks this question to emphasize that it is unlikely that someone would harm them if they do good things. AT: “No one will harm you if you do good things.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

suffer because of righteousness

You can translate this with a verbal phrase. AT: “suffer because you do what is right” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

you are blessed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will bless you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Do not fear what they fear. Do not be troubled

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that believers should not be afraid of those who persecute them. AT: “Do not be afraid of what people might do to you” (See: [Parallelism](#))

what they fear

Here the word “they” refers to anyone who might try to harm those to whom Peter is writing.

translationWords

- good, goodness
- suffer, suffering
- righteous, righteousness
- bless, blessed, blessing
- fear, fears, afraid

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Instead, acknowledge in your inner beings that Christ is your master, whom you love. Always be ready to answer anyone who demands that you tell them about what you are confidently expecting God to do for you. But answer them humbly and respectfully, ¹⁶ and make sure that you do nothing wrong, in order that those who speak evil about you may be ashamed when they see the good way in which you are conducting yourselves because you are joined to Christ. ¹⁷ It may be that God wants you to suffer. If so, it is better to do good deeds, even if you suffer for doing them, than to do evil deeds.

ULB:

¹⁵ Instead, set apart the Lord Christ in your hearts as holy. Always be ready to answer everyone who asks you why you have confidence in God. Do this with meekness and respect. ¹⁶ Have a good conscience so that the people who insult your good life in Christ may be ashamed because they are speaking against you as if you were evildoers. ¹⁷ It is better, if God desires, that you suffer for doing good than for doing evil.

translationNotes**Instead**

“Instead of being afraid and troubled”

set apart the Lord Christ in your hearts as holy

The phrase “set apart the Lord Christ ... as holy” means to acknowledge Christ’s holiness. This action is referred to as if it were putting something in a place of honor. (See: [Metaphor](#))

in your hearts

Here a person’s inner being and center of emotions is referred to as the “heart.” AT: “with all your will” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [set apart](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

- confidence, confident
- God
- meek, meekness
- conscience, consciences
- shame, shameful, ashamed
- evildoer

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ I say that because Christ died once for the sake of people who have sinned. He was a righteous person who died for unrighteous people. He died in order that he might bring us to God. During the time that he had an ordinary body, he was killed, but God's Spirit caused him to become alive again. ¹⁹ The Spirit also enabled him to go proclaim God's victory to the evil spirits whom God had imprisoned. ²⁰ Long ago, during the time that Noah was building a big boat, those evil spirits disobeyed God when he waited patiently to see if people would turn from their evil behavior. Only a few people were saved in that boat. Specifically, God brought only eight persons safely through the waters of the flood, while all the others drowned in it.

ULB:

¹⁸ Christ also suffered once for sins. He who is righteous suffered for us, who were unrighteous, so that he would bring us to God. He was put to death in the flesh, but he was made alive by the Spirit. ¹⁹ By the Spirit, he went and preached to the spirits who are now in prison. ²⁰ They were disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in the days of Noah, in the days of the building of an ark, and God saved a few people—eight souls—through the water.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Peter explains how Christ suffered and what Christ accomplished by suffering.

suffered for us

The word “us” refers to Peter and the audience. (See: **Inclusive “We”**)

so that he would bring us to God

Peter probably means here that Christ died in order to create a close relationship between us and God. (See: **Metaphor**)

He was put to death in the flesh

Here “flesh” refers to Christ's body; Christ was physically put to death. This can be stated in active form. AT: “People put Christ to death physically” (See: **Metaphor** and **Active or Passive**)

he was made alive by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Spirit made him alive” (See: **Active or Passive**)

by the Spirit

Possible meanings are 1) by the Holy Spirit's power or 2) in a spiritual existence.

By the Spirit, he went

Possible meanings are 1) "By the Holy Spirit's power, he went" or 2) "In his spiritual existence, he went."

the spirits who are now in prison

Possible meanings of the word "spirits" are 1) "evil spirits" or 2) "spirits of the dead people."

when the patience of God was waiting

The word "patience" is a metonym for God himself. Peter writes of God's patience as if it is a person. AT: "when God was waiting patiently" (See: [Personification](#) and [Metonymy](#))

in the days of Noah, in the days of the building of an ark

This can be stated in active form. AT: "during the time of Noah, when he was building an ark" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

eight souls

Here the word "souls" refers to people. AT: "eight people" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [unrighteous, unrighteousness](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [preach](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [disobey, disobedient, disobedience](#)
- [patient, patience](#)
- [Noah](#)
- [ark](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [soul, souls](#)
- [water, waters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 3:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ That water represents the water in which we are baptized, by which God saves us because he raised Jesus Christ from the dead. This water, of course, removes no dirt from our bodies. Instead, it shows that we are requesting God to assure us that he has removed our guilt for having sinned.

²² Christ has gone into heaven and is ruling in the place of highest honor next to God, after God caused all the evil and powerful spirit beings to be made obedient to him.

ULB:

²¹ This is a symbol of the baptism that saves you now—not as a washing away of dirt from the body, but as the appeal of a good conscience to God—through the resurrection of Jesus Christ. ²² Christ is at the right hand of God. He went into heaven. Angels, authorities, and powers must submit to him.

translationNotes**This is a symbol of the baptism that saves you now**

Peter says that baptism corresponds to the way in which God saved Noah and his family in the ark from the flood.

the baptism that saves you now

Baptism is the means by which God saves people. AT: “the baptism by which God saves you now” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the appeal of a good conscience to God

Possible meanings are 1) “the appeal of a person to God to give him a good conscience” or 2) “the pledge of a person to God made with a good conscience, that is, sincerely.”

through the resurrection of Jesus Christ

“because of the resurrection of Jesus Christ.” This phrase completes the thought, “This is a symbol of the baptism that saves you now.”

submit to him

“submit to Jesus Christ”

translationWords

- baptize, baptized, baptism
- save, saves, saved, safe
- conscience, consciences
- resurrection
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- right hand
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- angel, angels, archangel
- authority, authorities
- power, powers
- submit, in submission

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 3 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 04 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations of the Old Testament. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 4:18, which is a reference to the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Ungodly Gentiles

This passage uses the term “Gentiles” to refer to all ungodly people who are not Jews. It does not include Gentiles who have become Christians. “Sensuality, passion, drunkenness, carousings, wild parties, and disgusting acts of idolatry” were actions that characterized or typified the ungodly Gentiles. (See: [ungodly](#), [godless](#), [ungodliness](#), [godlessness](#))

Martyrdom

It is apparent that Peter is speaking to many Christians who are experiencing great persecution and are facing death for their beliefs.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Has ceased from sin”

This does not mean that anyone has stopped sinning. This would contradict other passages of Scripture. The UDB clarifies the meaning of this phrase. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Links:

- [1 Peter 04:01 Notes](#)

1 Peter 4:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Therefore, because Christ suffered in his body, you also be willing to suffer. Those who suffer in their bodies have stopped their sinning. ² As a result, during their remaining time here on earth, they do not do the things that sinful people desire to do, but instead they do the things that God wants them to do.

ULB:

¹ Therefore, because Christ suffered in the flesh, arm yourselves with the same intention. For whoever has suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin. ² As a result, such a person, for the rest of his time in the flesh, no longer lives for men's desires, but for God's will.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Peter continues to teach the believers about Christian living. He begins by giving a conclusion to his thoughts from the previous chapter about Christ's sufferings.

in the flesh

"in his body"

arm yourselves with the same intention

The phrase "arm yourselves" makes readers think of soldiers who get their weapons ready for battle. It also pictures "the same intention" as a weapon or perhaps as a piece of armor. Here this metaphor means that believers should be determined in their mind to suffer as Jesus did. AT: "prepare yourselves with the same thoughts that Christ had" (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the flesh

Here "flesh" means "body." AT: "in his body" or "while here on earth"

has ceased from sin

"has stopped sinning"

for men's desires

for the things that sinful people normally desire

translationWords

- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [will of God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 4:3-6

UDB:

³ I say that to you because you have already spent too much of your time here on earth doing what the people who do not know God like to do. In the past you committed all kinds of sexually immoral acts, you got drunk and then participated in orgies and carousing, and you worshiped idols, which is disgusting to God. ⁴ Now your friends are surprised that you do not join with them anymore when they do these things. As a result, they say bad things about you. ⁵ But one day they will have to admit to God everything they have done. He is the one who will judge them. ⁶ That is the reason why Christ preached the good news to the dead. He did that so that, although God had judged them when they were alive, they might by the power of the Holy Spirit live forever as God lives.

ULB:

³ You have spent enough time doing what the Gentiles want to do, living in sensuality, passion, drunkenness, drunken celebrations, having wild parties, and committing disgusting acts of idolatry. ⁴ They think it is strange that you do not join with them in these floods of reckless behavior, so they speak evil about you. ⁵ They will give an account to the one who is ready to judge the living and the dead. ⁶ For this purpose the gospel was preached also to the dead, so that, although they have been judged in the flesh as humans, they may live in the spirit the way God does.

translationNotes

drunken celebrations, having wild parties

These terms refer to activities in which people gather to drink alcohol excessively and behave in a shameful manner.

floods of dissipation

These examples of wild, boundless sin are spoken of as if they were great floods of water that sweep over people.

dissipation

limitless indulgence of bodily desires

the one who is ready to judge

Possible meanings are 1) "God, who is ready to judge" or 2) "Christ, who is ready to judge"

the living and the dead

This means all people, whether they are still alive or have died. AT: "every person" (See: [Merism](#))

the gospel was preached also to the dead

Possible meanings are 1) “the gospel was preached also to people who had already died” or 2) “the gospel was preached also to those who were alive but are now dead”

the gospel was preached

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) Christ preached. AT: “Christ preached the gospel” or 2) men preached. AT: “men preached the gospel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they have been judged in the flesh as humans

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) God judged them in this life on earth. AT: “God judged them in their bodies as humans” or 2) men judged them according to human standards. AT: “men judged them in their bodies as humans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

judged in the flesh as humans

This is a reference to death as the ultimate form of judgment. (See: [Euphemism](#))

live as God in the spirit

Possible meanings are 1) “live spiritually as God lives because the Holy Spirit will enable them to do so” or 2) “live according to God’s standards by the power of the Holy Spirit”

translationWords

- [Gentile, Gentiles](#)
- [drunk, drunkard](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [good news, gospel](#)
- [preach](#)
- [God](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 4:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ All things on this earth will soon come to an end. Therefore, keep thinking sensibly, and control what you think so that you can pray well. ⁸ Most importantly of all, love each other sincerely, because if we love others we will not try to find out what they have done wrong. ⁹ Provide food and a place to sleep for those Christian travelers who come among you, and do it without complaining.

ULB:

⁷ The end of all things is coming near. Therefore be of sound mind, and be sober in your thinking for the sake of prayers. ⁸ Above all things, have fervent love for one another, for love covers a multitude of sins. ⁹ Be hospitable to one another without complaining.

translationNotes**The end of all things**

This refers to the end of the world at Christ's second coming.

is coming

The end that will happen soon is spoken of as if it is physically coming closer in distance. AT: "will soon happen" (See: [Metaphor](#))

be of sound mind, and be sober in your thinking

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Peter uses them to emphasize the need to think clearly about life since the end of the world is near. (See: [Parallelism](#))

be sober in your thinking

Here the word "sober" refers to mental clarity and alertness. See how you translated this in [1 Peter 1:13](#). AT: "control your thoughts" or "be careful about what you think" (See: [Idiom](#))

Above all things

"Most importantly of all"

for love covers a multitude of sins

Peter describes “love” as if it were a person who places a cover over the sins of others. Possible meanings are 1) “for a person who loves will not try to find out if another person has sinned” or 2) “for a person who loves will forgive the sins of other people, even if those sins are many” (See: [Personification](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Be hospitable

Show kindness to and welcome guests and travelers

translationWords

- [mind](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 4:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Believers should all use the gifts that God has given them to serve others. They should manage well the various gifts that God has kindly given them. ¹¹ Those who speak to the assembly of believers should do that as if they were speaking the very words of God. Those who do kind deeds for others should do it with the strength that God gives them, in order that you might honor God as Jesus Christ enables us to do so. May we all praise God because he has all authority to rule everything forever. May it be so!

ULB:

¹⁰ As each one of you has received a gift, use it to serve one another, faithfully administering God's grace in its various forms. ¹¹ If anyone speaks, let it be with God's words. If anyone serves, let it be from the strength that God supplies. Do these things so that in all ways God would be glorified through Jesus Christ. May there be to Jesus Christ glory and power forever and ever. Amen.

translationNotes**As each one of you has received a gift**

This refers to special spiritual abilities that God gives to believers. AT: "Because each one of you has received a special spiritual ability as a gift from God" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that in all ways God would be glorified

This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that in all ways you will glorify God" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

glorified

praised, honored

translationWords

- receive
- gift, gifts
- serve, service
- manager, steward
- God
- strength, strengthen

- glorify, glorifies
- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- glory, glorious
- power, powers
- forever
- amen, truly

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 4:12-14**UDB:**

¹² You whom I love, do not be surprised about the painful things that you are suffering because you belong to Christ. Those things are testing you as people test metal by putting it into a fire. Do not think that something strange is happening to you. ¹³ Instead, rejoice that you are suffering the same kinds of things that Christ endured. Rejoice when you suffer, in order that you may also be very glad when Christ returns and shows everyone how glorious he is. ¹⁴ If others insult you because you believe in Christ, God is pleased with you, because it shows that the Spirit of God, the Spirit who reveals how great God is, lives within you.

ULB:

¹² Beloved, do not regard as strange the testing in the fire that has happened to you, as if something strange were happening to you. ¹³ Instead, however much you experience the sufferings of Christ, rejoice, so that you may also rejoice and be glad at the revealing of his glory. ¹⁴ If you are insulted for Christ's name, you are blessed, because the Spirit of glory and the Spirit of God is resting on you.

translationNotes**the testing in the fire that has happened to you**

In the same way that fire refines gold, trials test and refine a person's faith. (See: [Metaphor](#))

rejoice and be glad

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of joy. AT: "rejoice even more" or "be very glad" (See: [Doublet](#))

at the revealing of his glory

"when God reveals Christ's glory"

If you are insulted for Christ's name

Here the word "name" refers to Christ himself. This can be stated in active form. AT: "If people insult you because you believe in Christ" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the Spirit of glory and the Spirit of God

Both of these refer to the Holy Spirit. AT: "the Spirit of glory, who is the Spirit of God" or "the glorious Spirit of God" (See: [Parallelism](#))

is resting on you

is staying with you

translationWords

- [beloved](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 4:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ If you suffer, do not let it be because you murdered anyone, or stole anything, or did some other kind of evil thing, or because you interfered in someone else's affairs. ¹⁶ But if you suffer because you are a Christian, do not be ashamed about it. Instead, praise God that you are suffering because you belong to Christ.

ULB:

¹⁵ But let none of you suffer as a murderer, a thief, an evildoer, or a meddler. ¹⁶ But if anyone suffers as a Christian, let him not be ashamed; instead, let him glorify God with that name.

translationNotes**a meddler**

This refers to a person who gets involved with the affairs of others without having a right to do so.

with that name

“because he bears the name Christian” or “because people have recognized him as a Christian.” The words “that name” refer to the word “Christian.”

translationWords

- [evildoer](#)
- [Christian](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [glorify, glorifies](#)
- [God](#)
- [name, names, named](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 4:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ I say this, because it is now time for God to begin judging people, and first he will judge those who belong to him. Since he will judge us believers first, think about the terrible things that will happen to those who do not obey the good news that comes from him! ¹⁸ That will be as it is written in the scriptures:

”Many righteous people will have to suffer many difficult trials before going to heaven.

So ungodly and sinful people will surely have to suffer much severe punishment from God!”

¹⁹ Therefore, those who suffer because God wishes it, should trust God to keep them—God is the one who created them and he is the one who always does what he promises to do. And so they should continue to do what is right.

ULB:

¹⁷ For it is time for judgment to begin with the household of God. If it begins with us, what will be the outcome for those who do not obey God’s gospel?

¹⁸ And ”If it is difficult for the righteous to be saved, what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?”

¹⁹ Therefore let those who suffer because of God’s will entrust their souls to the faithful Creator in well-doing.

translationNotes**household of God**

This phrase refers to believers, whom Peter speaks of as God’s family. (See: [Metaphor](#))

If it begins with us, what will be the outcome for those who do not obey God’s gospel?

Peter use this question to emphasize that God’s judgment will be more severe for people who reject the gospel than for believers. AT: “If it begins with us, the outcome for those who do not obey God’s gospel will be much worse.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

what will be the outcome for those

“what will happen to those”

those who do not obey God’s gospel

“those who do not believe God’s gospel.” Here the word “obey” means to believe.

the righteous ... what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?

Peter use this question to emphasize that sinners will suffer much more than believers do. AT: “the righteous man ... the outcome will be much worse for the ungodly and the sinner.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

what will become of the ungodly and the sinner

“what will happen to the ungodly and the sinner”

If it is difficult for the righteous to be saved

Here the word “saved” refers to final salvation when Christ returns. This can be stated in active form. AT: “If the righteous person experiences many difficulties before God saves him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the ungodly and the sinner

The words “ungodly” and “sinner” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the wickedness of these people. AT: “ungodly sinners” (See: [Doublet](#))

entrust their souls

Here the word “souls” refers to the whole person. AT: “entrust themselves” or “entrust their lives” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

in well-doing

The abstract noun “well-doing” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “while they do good” or “while they live rightly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- household
- God
- obey, obedient, obedience
- good news, gospel
- righteous, righteousness
- save, saves, saved, safe
- ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- will of God
- soul, souls

- [faithful, faithfulness](#)
- [create, creation, Creator](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 05 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Verses [1 Peter 12-14](#) form the closing salutation of the letter. This was typical for a letter in the ancient Near East.

Special concepts in this chapter

Elders

There is some disagreement over the titles used for church leaders. Some of these titles are overseer, elder, pastor, deacons and bishop.

Crowns

Crowns are a significant image used in Scripture. There are several Greek words translated as “crowns” in English. The crown referenced here is a type of reward. (See: [reward](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Lion

God is pictured as a lion in Scripture. Jesus is the lion of the tribe of Judah. In this chapter, Satan is described as “like a roaring lion.” Its meaning is that Satan seeks to destroy the testimony or witness of Christians, but it is possible that this phrase is used because he is an imitator of God.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Babylon

Babylon was the epitome of evil. Babylon is often a metaphor for an evil place or an evil people. In this chapter, it is probably a reference to Rome. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [1 Peter 05:01 Notes](#)

1 Peter 5:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Now I will say this to those among you who are elders, you who lead the assemblies of believers: I am also an elder. I also am one of those who saw Christ suffer, and I will also share some of the glory that Christ has in heaven. ² I appeal to you elders to take care of the people who are in your assemblies. Do this as if you were shepherds who take care of their flocks of sheep. Do this, not because you must do it, but instead do it willingly, as God desires. Do not be greedy to get money for doing it, but instead do it enthusiastically. ³ Do not act like domineering bosses over the people whom God has assigned to you, but instead be examples to them by the way in which you conduct your lives. ⁴ If you do that, when Jesus, who is like our chief shepherd, appears, he will give each of you a splendid reward. That reward will be like the wreaths that are given to athletes who win races, but your reward will never wither like those wreaths do.

ULB:

¹ I am exhorting the elders among you, I, who am a fellow elder and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and am also one who will share in the glory that will be revealed: ² Be shepherds of God's flock that is under your care, serving as overseers—not because you must, but because you are willing, as God would have you serve—not for shameful profit but eagerly. ³ Do not act as a master over the people who are in your care. Instead, be an example to the flock. ⁴ Then when the Chief Shepherd is revealed, you will receive an unfading crown of glory.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Peter speaks specifically to men who are elders.

a participant in

“one who shares in” or “one who takes part in”

the glory that will be revealed

This is a reference to Christ's second coming. This can be stated in active form. AT: “the glory of Christ that God will reveal” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

tend the flock of God

Peter speaks of the believers as a flock of sheep and the elders as the shepherds who care for them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Look after them

“Care for them”

Do not act as a master over the people ... Instead, be an example

Elders are to lead by example and not act toward the people as a harsh master would toward his servants. (See: [Metaphor](#))

who are in your care

You can translate this using a verbal phrase. AT: “whom God has placed in your care” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Then when the Chief Shepherd is revealed

Peter speaks of Jesus as if he were a shepherd who had authority over all other shepherds. This can be stated in active form. AT: “When Jesus, the Chief Shepherd, appears” or “When God reveals Jesus, the Chief Shepherd” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

an unfading crown of glory

Here the word “crown” represents the reward that someone receives as a symbol of victory. The word “unfading” means that it is eternal. AT: “a glorious prize that will last forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

of glory

glorious

translationWords

- [exhort, exhortation](#)
- [elder](#)
- [witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)
- [suffer, suffering](#)
- [Christ, Messiah](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [God](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [chief](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 5 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 5:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Now I will say this to you young men. You must obey the older men in the assembly. All of you believers should act humbly toward each other, because it is true that God opposes those who are proud, but he acts kindly toward those who are humble.

⁶ Therefore, realizing that God has great power to punish proud people, humble yourselves in order that he may honor you at the time that he has determined. ⁷ Because he takes care of you, let him take care of all the things that you are worried about.

ULB:

⁵ In the same way, you younger men, submit to the older men. All of you, clothe yourselves with humility and serve one another. For God resists the proud, but he gives grace to the humble. ⁶ Therefore humble yourselves under God's mighty hand so that he may lift you up in due time. ⁷ Cast all your anxiety on him, because he cares for you.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Peter gives an instruction specifically to younger men and then continues to instruct all of the believers.

In the same way

This refers back to the way the elders submitted to the Chief Shepherd in [1 Peter 5:1-4](#).

All of you

This refers to all believers, not just the younger men.

clothe yourselves with humility

Peter speaks of having the moral quality of humility as putting on a piece of clothing. AT: "act humbly toward each other" or "act with humility" (See: [Metaphor](#))

under God's mighty hand

Here the word "hand" refers to God's power to save the humble and punish the proud. AT: "under God's great power" or "before God, realizing that he has great power," (See: [Metonymy](#))

Cast all your anxiety on him

Peter speaks of anxiety as if it were a heavy burden that a person places on God, rather than carrying it himself. AT: “Trust him with everything that worries you” or “Let him take care of all the things that trouble you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [submit, in submission](#)
- [clothe, clothed](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [proud, pride, prideful](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [mighty, might](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 5 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 5:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Always be alert and pay attention, because the devil, who is your enemy, is going around, looking for people to destroy. He is like a lion that roars as it prowls around, seeking someone to kill and devour. ⁹ You must resist him by continuing to firmly trust in Christ and his message, remembering that your fellow believers all over the world are suffering similar hardships.

ULB:

⁸ Be sober, be watchful. Your adversary, the devil, is stalking around like a roaring lion, looking for someone to devour. ⁹ Stand against him. Be strong in your faith. You know that your community of believers that is in the world is enduring the same sufferings.

translationNotes**Be sober**

Here the word “sober” refers to mental clarity and alertness. See how you translated this in [1 Peter 1:13](#). AT: “Control your thoughts” or “Be careful about what you think” (See: [Idiom](#))

the devil, is stalking around like a roaring lion ... looking for someone to devour

Peter compares the devil to a roaring lion. Just as a hungry lion completely devours its prey, the devil is seeking to completely destroy the faith of believers. (See: [Simile](#))

stalking around

“walking about” or “walking about and hunting”

Stand against him

Standing is a metonym for fighting. AT: “Fight against him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

your community

Peter speaks of fellow believers as members of the same community. AT: “your fellow believers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the world

“in various places throughout the world”

translationWords

- adversary, enemy
- Satan, devil, evil one
- lion
- devour
- faith
- suffer, suffering
- brother, brothers
- world, worldly

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 5 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 5:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ God is the one who kindly helps us in every situation, and he is the one who chose us to share his eternal glory in heaven because we are joined to Christ. And after you have suffered for a while because of things that people do to harm you, he will remove your spiritual defects, he will strengthen you to trust him more, and he will support you in every way. ¹¹ I pray that he will rule powerfully forever. May it be so!

ULB:

¹⁰ After you suffer for a little while, the God of all grace, who called you to his eternal glory in Christ, will perfect you, establish you, and strengthen you. ¹¹ To him be the dominion forever and ever. Amen.

translationNotes**General Information:**

This is the end of Peter's letter. Here he gives his final remarks about his letter and his closing greetings.

for a little while

“for a short time”

the God of all grace

Here the word “grace” may refer either to the things that God gives or to God's character. Possible meanings are 1) “the God who always gives us what we need” or 2) “the God who is always gracious.”

who called you to his eternal glory in Christ

“who chose you to share his eternal glory in heaven because you are joined to Christ”

perfect you

“make you perfect” or “restore you” or “make you well again”

establish you, and strengthen you

These two expressions have similar meanings, that is, that God will enable the believers to trust in him and to obey him regardless of any suffering they may experience. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- suffer, suffering
- God
- grace, gracious
- call, calls, calling, called
- everlasting, eternal, eternity
- glory, glorious
- Christ, Messiah
- perfect
- strength, strengthen
- dominion
- forever
- amen, truly

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 5 translationQuestions](#)

1 Peter 5:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Silas has written this letter for me as I have dictated it to him. I consider that he is a faithful fellow believer. I have written this short letter to you to encourage you, and I want to assure you that what I have written is a true message about the things that God kindly does for us, things that we do not deserve. Continue to firmly believe this message.

¹³ In this city that we sometimes call ‘Babylon,’ the believers, whom God has chosen to belong to him just like he chose you, send you their greetings. Mark, who is like a son to me, also sends you his greetings. ¹⁴ Greet each other with a kiss on the cheek to show that you love each other. I pray that God will give peace to all of you who are joined to Christ.

ULB:

¹² I regard Silvanus as a faithful brother, and I have written to you briefly through him. I am exhorting you and I am testifying to you that what I have written is the true grace of God. Stand in it. ¹³ The woman who is in Babylon, who is chosen together with you, greets you. Also Mark, my son, greets you. ¹⁴ Greet one another with a kiss of love.

May peace be to you all who are in Christ.

translationNotes**I have written to you briefly through him**

Silvanus wrote the words that Peter told him to write in the letter.

what I have written is the true grace of God

“I have written about the true grace of God.” Here the word “grace” refers to the gospel message, which tells of the kind things that God has done for believers. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Stand in it

The word “it” refers to “the true grace of God.” Being strongly committed to this grace is spoken of as standing firmly in one place, refusing to move. AT: “Remain strongly committed to it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

The woman who is in Babylon

Here “The woman” probably refers to the group of believers who live in “Babylon.” Possible meanings for “Babylon” are 1) it is a symbol for the city of Rome, 2) it is a symbol for anywhere that Christians are suffering, or 3) it refers literally to the city of Babylon. It most likely refers to the city of Rome. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

who is chosen together with you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom God has chosen as he has chosen you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

my son

Peter speaks of Mark as if he is his spiritual son. AT: “my spiritual son” or “who is like a son to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a kiss of love

“a loving kiss” or “a kiss to show your love for each other”

translationWords

- Silas, Silvanus
- faithful, faithfulness
- brother, brothers
- exhort, exhortation
- testimony, testify
- true, truth, truths
- Babylon, Babylonian
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- John Mark
- son, sons
- kiss
- love, loves, loving, loved
- peace, peaceful
- in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Links:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)
- [1 Peter 05 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 5 translationQuestions](#)

translationQuestions

1 Peter 1

Of whom was Peter an apostle?

Peter was an apostle of Jesus Christ. [1:1]

To whom did Peter write?

Peter wrote to the foreigners of the dispersion, the chosen ones, throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia. [1:1]

How did the foreigners become the chosen ones?

The foreigners became the chosen ones according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, and by the sanctifying of the Holy Spirit. [1:1]

How did the foreigners become the chosen ones?

The foreigners became the chosen ones according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, and by the sanctifying of the Holy Spirit. [1:2]

What did Peter want the believers to have?

Peter wanted them to have grace and increased peace. [1:3]

Who did Peter want to be blessed?

Peter wanted the God and Father of their Lord Jesus Christ to be blessed. [1:3]

How did God give them a new birth?

God gave them a new birth in his great mercy. [1:3]

Why would the inheritance not perish, become stained, or fade away?

Because the inheritance was reserved in heaven for them. [1:4]

By what means were they protected in God's power?

They were protected through faith for the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last times. [1:5]

Why was it necessary for them to feel sorrow in many different trials?

It was necessary so that their faith would be tested, and that their faith would be found to result in praise, glory, and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ. [1:7]

What was more precious than gold which perishes?

Faith was more precious than gold. [1:7]

Although the believers had not seen Jesus, what did they do?

They loved him and believed in him, and were very glad with unspeakable joy that was full of glory. [1:8]

What did the ones who believed in him receive as the result of their faith?

They received the salvation of their souls. [1:9]

About what did the prophets search and inquire carefully?

The prophets searched about the salvation the believers were receiving, about the grace that was to be theirs. [1:10]

About what was the Spirit of Christ telling the prophets in advance?

He was telling them about the sufferings of Christ and the glories that would follow him. [1:11]

Whom were the prophets serving by their searches and inquiries?

They were serving the believers. [1:12]

Who desired the results of the prophets' searches and inquiries to be revealed?

Even the angels desired the results to be revealed. [1:12]

What did Peter command the believers to do as obedient children?

He commanded them to prepare their mind to obey God, be sober in their thinking, and have complete confidence in the grace that would be brought them, and not to conform themselves to their former desires. [1:13]

What did Peter command the believers to do as obedient children?

He commanded them to prepare their mind to obey God, be sober in their thinking, and have complete confidence in the grace that would be brought them, and not to conform themselves to their former desires. [1:14]

Why did Peter say the believers should be holy?

Because the one who called them is holy. [1:15]

Why did Peter say the believers should be holy?

Because the one who called them is holy. [1:16]

Why should the believers spend the time of their journey in reverence?

Because they called as “Father” the one who judges impartially according to each person’s work. [1:17]

With what were the believers redeemed?

They were not redeemed with silver or gold, but with the honored blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. [1:18]

With what were the believers redeemed?

They were not redeemed with silver or gold, but with the honored blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. [1:19]

From whom had the foreigners, the chosen ones, learned foolish behavior?

They had learned the foolish behavior from their fathers. [1:19]

When was Christ chosen, and when was he revealed?

He was chosen before the foundation of the world; he was revealed to the foreigners, the chosen ones, in what was then the last times. [1:20]

How did the believers believe in God, and have faith and confidence in God?

Through Christ, whom God raised from the dead and to whom God gave glory. [1:20]

How did the believers believe in God, and have faith and confidence in God?

Through Christ, whom God raised from the dead and to whom God gave glory. [1:21]

How did the believers make their souls pure?

They made their souls pure by obedience to the truth for brotherly love. [1:22]

How were the believers born again?

They were born again from imperishable seed, through the living and remaining word of God, not from perishable seed. [1:23]

What is all flesh like, and what is its glory like?

Flesh is like grass; its glory is like the flower of grass. [1:24]

What happens to the word of the Lord?

The word of the Lord remains forever. [1:25]

1 Peter 2

What were the believers told to put aside?

They were told to put aside all evil deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and slander. [2:1]

Why were the believers to long for pure spiritual milk?

They were to long for pure spiritual milk that they might grow in salvation. [2:2]

Who was the living stone who was rejected by people and chosen by God?

Jesus Christ was the living stone. [2:4]

Who was the living stone who was rejected by people and chosen by God?

Jesus Christ was the living stone. [2:5]

Why were the believers also like living stones?

They were like living stones because they were being built up to be a spiritual house. [2:5]

Why did the builders stumble, disobeying the word?

The builders stumbled because they were appointed to do that. [2:7]

Why did the builders stumble, disobeying the word?

The builders stumbled because they were appointed to do that. [2:8]

Why were the believers a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, and a people for God's possession?

They were chosen so that they might announce the wonderful actions of God. [2:9]

Why were the believers a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, and a people for God's possession?

They were chosen so that they might announce the wonderful actions of God. [2:10]

Why did Peter call the beloved to abstain from sinful desires?

He called them to abstain so that those who might speak of them as having done evil would see their good behavior and praise God. [2:11]

Why did Peter call the beloved to abstain from sinful desires?

He called them to abstain so that those who might speak of them as having done evil would see their good behavior and praise God. [2:12]

Why were the believers to obey every human authority?

They were to obey every human authority because God wanted to use their obedience to silence the ignorant talk of foolish people. [2:13]

Why were the believers to obey every human authority?

They were to obey every human authority because God wanted to use their obedience to silence the ignorant talk of foolish people. [2:14]

Why were the believers to obey every human authority?

They were to obey every human authority because God wanted to use their obedience to silence the ignorant talk of foolish people. [2:15]

Instead of using their freedom as a covering for wickedness, what were the foreigners, the chosen ones, to do?

They were to use their freedom to be servants of God. [2:16]

Why were servants supposed to be subject to their masters, even the malicious ones?

Servants were supposed to be subject even to malicious masters because doing good and then suffering, being punished for it is praiseworthy with God. [2:18]

Why were servants supposed to be subject to their masters, even the malicious ones?

Servants were supposed to be subject even to malicious masters because doing good and then suffering, being punished for it is praiseworthy with God. [2:19]

Why were servants supposed to be subject to their masters, even the malicious ones?

Servants were supposed to be subject even to malicious masters because doing good and then suffering, being punished for it is praiseworthy with God. [2:20]

Why were the servants called to suffer for doing good?

Because Christ suffered for them, leaving an example for them, and gave himself to the one who judges justly. [2:21]

Why were the servants called to suffer for doing good?

Because Christ suffered for them, leaving an example for them, and gave himself to the one who judges justly. [2:22]

Why were the servants called to suffer for doing good?

Because Christ suffered for them, leaving an example for them, and gave himself to the one who judges justly. [2:23]

Why did Christ carry Peter, believers, and the servants' sins in his body to the tree?

He carried their sins so that they might have no more part in sin and live for righteousness, and because they were healed by his bruises. [2:24]

After they all had been wandering away like lost sheep, to whom did they return?

They all returned to the shepherd and guardian of their souls. [2:25]

1 Peter 3

Why should wives submit to their husbands?

Wives should submit so that those husbands who are disobedient might be won without a word. [3:1]

How should wives win their husbands?

Wives should win them with the inner person of the heart, not outward adornment. [3:3]

How should wives win their husbands?

Wives should win them with the inner person of the heart, not outward adornment. [3:4]

Which holy woman did Peter mention as an example of a wife who had confidence in God and submitted to her husband?

Peter mentioned Sarah as an example. [3:5]

Which holy woman did Peter mention as an example of a wife who had confidence in God and submitted to her husband?

Peter mentioned Sarah as an example. [3:6]

Why should husbands live with their wives according to knowledge?

Husbands should live with their wives according to knowledge so their prayers are not hindered. [3:7]

Why did Peter instruct all of the foreigners, the chosen ones, to be likeminded and to continue to bless?

Because they were all called to do so, that they might inherit a blessing. [3:8]

Why did Peter instruct all of the foreigners, the chosen ones, to be likeminded and to continue to bless?

Because they were all called to do so, that they might inherit a blessing. [3:9]

Why should the one who wants to love life stop his tongue from evil, and turn away from what is bad and do what is good?

Because the eyes of the Lord see the righteous. [3:10]

Why should the one who wants to love life stop his tongue from evil, and turn away from what is bad and do what is good?

Because the eyes of the Lord see the righteous. [3:11]

Why should the one who wants to love life stop his tongue from evil, and turn away from what is bad and do what is good?

Because the eyes of the Lord see the righteous. [3:12]

Who were the ones who were blessed?

Those who suffered because of righteousness were blessed. [3:14]

What were the believers told to do to maintain their confidence in God?

They were told to set apart the Lord Christ as precious in their hearts. [3:15]

How were the believers always to answer everyone who asked about their confidence in God?

They were to answer always with meekness and respect. [3:15]

How were the believers always to answer everyone who asked about their confidence in God?

They were to answer always with meekness and respect. [3:16]

Why did Christ suffer once for sins?

Christ suffered once so that he would bring Peter and the believers to God. [3:18]

Why were the spirits to whom Christ preached in the spirit now in prison?

The spirits who are now in prison were disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in the days of Noah. [3:19]

Why were the spirits to whom Christ preached in the spirit now in prison?

The spirits who are now in prison were disobedient when the patience of God was waiting in the days of Noah. [3:20]

What did God saving a few people through the water symbolize?

It symbolized the baptism that now saves the believer. [3:21]

As Jesus is at the right hand of God in heaven, what must angels, authorities, and powers do?

They must all submit to him. [3:22]

1 Peter 4

With what did Peter command the believers to arm themselves?

He commanded them to arm themselves with the same intention that Christ had when he suffered in the flesh. [4:1]

Why did the Gentiles speak evil about the believers?

They spoke evil about the foreigners, the chosen ones, because they did not participate in sensuality, passion, drunkenness, carousing, wild parties, and in wicked idolatries like the Gentiles. [4:3]

Why did the Gentiles speak evil about the believers?

They spoke evil about the foreigners, the chosen ones, because they did not participate in sensuality, passion, drunkenness, carousing, wild parties, and in wicked idolatries like the Gentiles. [4:4]

Who is God ready to judge?

God is ready to judge both the living and the dead. [4:5]

Why were the believers to be of sound mind and have fervent love for one another?

They were to do those things because the end of all things was coming, and for the sake of their prayers. [4:7]

Why were each of the believers to use the gifts they had received to serve one another?

They were to use their gifts so that God may be glorified through Jesus Christ. [4:10]

Why were each of the believers to use the gifts they had received to serve one another?

They were to use their gifts so that God may be glorified through Jesus Christ. [4:11]

Why were the believers told to rejoice if they experienced the sufferings of Christ or were insulted for the name of Christ?

Because they were blessed if they were insulted. [4:12]

Why were the believers told to rejoice if they experienced the sufferings of Christ or were insulted for the name of Christ?

Because they were blessed if they were insulted. [4:13]

Why were the believers told to rejoice if they experienced the sufferings of Christ or were insulted for the name of Christ?

Because they were blessed if they were insulted. [4:14]

For what actions were Christians not to be found guilty and suffer?

Christians were not to suffer as murderers, thieves, evildoers, or meddlers. [4:15]

Why should the ungodly person and the sinner obey God's gospel?

Because even the righteous man is saved through difficulties. [4:17]

Why should the ungodly person and the sinner obey God's gospel?

Because even the righteous man is saved through difficulties. [4:18]

How were those who suffered according to the will of God to act?

They were to entrust their souls to the faithful Creator while they did good. [4:19]

1 Peter 5

Who was Peter?

Peter was a fellow elder, a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and a participant in the glory that will be revealed. [5:1]

What did Peter exhort his fellow elders to do?

He exhorted them to tend the flock of God and look after them. [5:1]

What did Peter exhort his fellow elders to do?

He exhorted them to tend the flock of God and look after them. [5:2]

To whom were the younger men to submit?

They were to submit to the older men. [5:5]

Why were all of them need to have humility and serve one another?

Because God gives grace to the humble, and so that God might exalt them in due time. [5:5]

Why were all of them need to have humility and serve one another?

Because God gives grace to the humble, and so that God might exalt them in due time. [5:6]

Why were all of them need to have humility and serve one another?

Because God gives grace to the humble, and so that God might exalt them in due time. [5:7]

What were the people instructed to do?

They were instructed to be sober, to be watchful, to stand firm against the devil, and to be strong in their faith. [5:8]

What is the devil like?

He is like a roaring lion stalking around, looking for someone to devour. [5:8]

What were the people instructed to do?

They were instructed to be sober, to be watchful, to stand firm against the devil, and to be strong in their faith. [5:9]

What would happen to the people after they had suffered for a little while?

God would perfect, establish, and strengthen them. [5:10]

As whom did Peter regard Silvanus?

Peter regarded Silvanus as a faithful brother. [5:12]

What did Peter say about what he had written?

He said that what he had written was the true grace of God. [5:12]

Who greeted the believers and how were they to greet one another?

She who was in Babylon, and Mark, Peter's son, greeted them; they were to greet one another with a kiss of love. [5:13]

Who greeted the believers and how were they to greet one another?

She who was in Babylon, and Mark, Peter's son, greeted them; they were to greet one another with a kiss of love. [5:14]

translationWords

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, [Sarah](#), Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:6-9
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- James 02:21-24
- Matthew 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham**’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.

- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Uses:

- **1 Peter 3:5-6**

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: [Satan](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Isaiah 09:11-12
- Job 06:21-23
- Lamentations 04:12-13
- Luke 12:57-59
- Matthew 13:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:8-9](#)

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULB) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”
- (See also: fulfill, [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19-20
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H543, G281

Uses:

- [1 Peter 4:10-11](#)
- [1 Peter 5:10-11](#)

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: [God the Father](#), [son](#), [Son of God](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:1-3
- Acts 07:31-32
- Acts 07:44-46
- Acts 22:3-5
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Genesis 31:41-42
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:11-12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:6-7
- Mark 10:7-9

- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:18-19](#)

angel, angels, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), messenger, Michael, ruler, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:22-23

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God!
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:11-12
- 1 Peter 3:21-22

apostle, apostles, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [authority](#), disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- [Jude 01:17-19](#)
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles’** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles’** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

appoint, appoints, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Acts 03:19-20
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 13:48-49
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:7-8](#)

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:18-20](#)
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:25-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)

Asia

Facts:

In Bible times, “Asia” was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
- To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, “the ancient Roman province called Asia” or “Asia Province.”
- All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Rome, Paul, Ephesus)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 16:19-20](#)
- [1 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 16:6-8
- Acts 27:1-2
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)
- Romans 16:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: G773

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

authority, authorities

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, **obey**, **power**, ruler)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10-12
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35-36
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:4-5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:21-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Titus 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 3:21-22

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, Judah, Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- Matthew 01:9-11
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

Uses:

- **1 Peter 5:12-14**

baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

- Besides water baptism, the Bible talks about being “baptized with the Holy Spirit” and “baptized with fire.”
- The term “baptism” is also used in the Bible to refer to going through great suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash,” or “spiritually cleanse.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing,” or “a spiritual washing.”
- When it refers to suffering, “baptism” could also be translated as “a time of terrible suffering” or “a cleansing through severe suffering.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:37-39
- Acts 08:36-38
- Acts 09:17-19
- Acts 10:46-48
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John’s message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.

- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G907

Uses:

- **1 Peter 3:21-22**

believe, believes, believed, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), believer)

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:23-24](#)
- Acts 09:40-43
- Acts 28:23-24
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Job 09:16-18
- John 01:12-13
- Mark 01:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G544, G569, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 2:6
- 1 Peter 2:7-8

beloved

Definition:

The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14-16
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 John 04:7-8](#)
- Mark 01:9-11
- Mark 12:6-7
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)
- Romans 16:6-8
- Song of Solomon 01:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:11-12](#)
- [1 Peter 4:12-14](#)

blemish

Facts:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: believer, clean, [sacrifice](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:18-19](#)
- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- Deuteronomy 15:19-21
- Numbers 06:13-15
- Song of Solomon 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3971, H8400, H8549, G3470

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:18-19](#)

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:14-17
- Acts 13:32-34
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 14:19-20
- Isaiah 44:3-4
- James 01:22-25
- Luke 06:20-21
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:5-6
- Romans 04:9-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 3:13-14
- 1 Peter 4:12-14

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- 1 Samuel 14:31-32
- Acts 02:20-21
- Acts 05:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 04:10-12
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:1-2**
- **1 Peter 1:18-19**

body, bodies

Definition:

The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: [head](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- Ephesians 04:4-6
- Judges 14:7-9
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:8-9
- Romans 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:24-25](#)

born again, born of God, new birth

Definition:

The term “born again” was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms “born of God” and “born of the Spirit” also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a “new birth” when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God’s Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God’s work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “born again” could include “born anew” or “born spiritually.”
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term “new birth” might be translated as “spiritual birth.”
- The phrase “born of God” could be translated as “caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby” or “given new life by God.”
- In the same way, “born of the Spirit” could be translated as “given new life by the Holy Spirit” or “empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God’s child” or “caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:9-10](#)
- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [1 Peter 01:22-23](#)
- [John 03:3-4](#)
- [John 03:7-8](#)
- [Titus 03:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G313, G509, G1080, G3824

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:22-23

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Genesis 29:9-10
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Nehemiah 03:1-2
- Philippians 04:21-23
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 5:8-9
- 1 Peter 5:12-14

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:15-17
- 1 Peter 2:9-10
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 5:10-11

chief

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:1-2
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:1-4](#)

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, promise, [son](#), [spirit](#), [believer](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- Galatians 04:19-20
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:13-14](#)
- [1 Peter 3:5-6](#)

chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- [2 John 01:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 03:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 65:22-23](#)
- [Luke 18:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 24:19-22](#)

- Romans 08:33-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:6
- 1 Peter 2:9-10
- 1 Peter 5:12-14

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, David, [Jesus](#), anoint)

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:1-3](#)
- Acts 02:34-36
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25-26
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:15-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:11-12**
- **1 Peter 1:18-19**
- **1 Peter 1:20-21**
- **1 Peter 2:21-23**
- **1 Peter 3:15-17**
- **1 Peter 4:1-2**
- **1 Peter 4:12-14**
- **1 Peter 5:1-4**
- **1 Peter 5:10-11**

Christian

Definition:

Some time after Jesus went back to heaven, people made up the name “Christian” which means, “follower of Christ.”

- It was in the city of Antioch where Jesus’ followers were first called “Christians.”
- A Christian is a person who believes that Jesus is the Son of God, and who trusts Jesus to save him from his sins.
- In our modern times, often the term “Christian” is used for someone who identifies with the Christian religion, but who is not really following Jesus. This is not the meaning of “Christian” in the Bible.
- Because the term “Christian” in the Bible always refers to someone who truly believes in Jesus, a Christian is also called a “believer.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “Christ-follower” or “follower of Christ” or perhaps something like, “Christ-person.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is translated differently than terms used for disciple or apostle.
- Be careful to translate this term with a word that can refer to everyone who believes in Jesus, not just certain groups.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Antioch, [Christ](#), church, disciple, believer, [Jesus](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:7-8
- [1 Peter 04:15-16](#)
- Acts 11:25-26
- Acts 26:27-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [46:09](#) It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “**Christians**.”
- [47:14](#)] Paul and other **Christian** leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- [49:15](#) If you believe in Jesus and what he has done for you, you are a **Christian!**
- [49:16](#) If you are a **Christian**, God has forgiven your sins because of what Jesus did.

- **49:17** Even though you are a **Christian**, you will still be tempted to sin.
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told **Christians** to proclaim the good news to people who have never heard it.
- **50:11** When Jesus returns, every **Christian** who has died will rise from the dead and meet him in the sky.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5546

Uses:

- **1 Peter 4:15-16**

clothe, clothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:48-49

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H1545, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4346, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2439, G2440, G3608, G4016, G4470, G4616, G4683, G4749, G5509, G6005

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:5-7](#)

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, [faithful](#), promise, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:6-7
- [1 Peter 02:21-23](#)
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:40-43
- Psalm 058:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H5003, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:21-23](#)

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:40-42
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:8-9](#)

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), believer, bold, [faithful](#), hope, trust)

Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H985, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G1340, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:3-5](#)
- [1 Peter 1:13-14](#)
- [1 Peter 1:20-21](#)

- 1 Peter 3:5-6
- 1 Peter 3:15-17

conscience, consciences

Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

- God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
- A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
- If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
- If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
- Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:18-20
- 1 Timothy 03:8-10
- 2 Corinthians 05:11-12
- 2 Timothy 01:3-5
- Romans 09:1-2
- Titus 01:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4893

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:15-17](#)
- [1 Peter 3:21-22](#)

cornerstone, cornerstones

Definition:

The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building’s foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

- Acts 04:11-12
- Ephesians 02:19-22
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:6](#)

create, creation, Creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news “to all creation” means to preach the good news “to all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: [God](#), [good news](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

se, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world was created.

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- [1 Peter 04:17-19](#)
- Colossians 01:15-17

- Galatians 06:14-16
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

Uses:

- [1 Peter 4:17-19](#)

crown, to crown

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), olive)

Bible References:

- John 19:1-3
- Lamentations 05:15-16
- Matthew 27:27-29
- Philippians 04:1-3
- Psalms 021:3-4
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

Uses:

- 1 Peter 5:1-4

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, [dominion](#), kingdom, [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- 2 Samuel 22:10-12
- Colossians 01:13-14
- Isaiah 05:29-30
- Jeremiah 13:15-17
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:9-10](#)

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:20-21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:19-20
- Colossians 02:13-15
- Colossians 02:20-23
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Romans 05:10-11
- Romans 05:12-13
- Romans 06:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1478, H4191, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8546, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G599, G615, G684, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G5053, G5054

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:3-5](#)

- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:3-6

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 03:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 31:26-28](#)
- [Leviticus 19:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 27:62-64](#)
- [Micah 06:11-12](#)

{{tag>publish review}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:1-3](#)
- [1 Peter 2:21-23](#)
- [1 Peter 3:10-12](#)

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:8-9](#)
- Amos 01:9-10
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Ezekiel 16:20-22
- Luke 15:28-30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:8-9](#)

disobey, disobedient, disobedience

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:20-22
- Acts 26:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 3:1-2
- 1 Peter 3:18-20

disperse, dispersion

Definition:

The terms “disperse” and “dispersion” refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about “dispersing” people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term “dispersion” is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase “the dispersion” could be translated as “believers in many different places” or “the people who moved away to live in different nations.”
- The term “disperse” could be translated as “send away into many different places” or “scatter abroad” or “cause to move away to live in different countries.”

(See also: believer, persecute)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- Ezekiel 12:14-16
- Ezekiel 30:22-24
- Psalms 018:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H4127, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G1287, G1290, G4650

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:10-11](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:10-11](#)

drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God’s Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:12-14
- Luke 07:33-35
- Luke 21:34-35
- Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5433, H5435, H7301, H7302, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

Uses:

- [1 Peter 4:3-6](#)

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14-16
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23-26
- Mark 11:27-28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:1-4](#)

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:1-3
- James 01:12-13
- Luke 21:16-19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Revelation 01:9-11
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H386, H3201, H3557, H3885, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2553, G2594, G3114, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:18-20

envy, covet**Definition:**

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- **1 Peter 02:1-3**
- Exodus 20:15-17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

Uses:

- **1 Peter 2:1-3**

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:1-2](#)
- [1 John 05:11-12](#)
- Acts 13:46-47
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Luke 18:18-21
- Romans 05:20-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5703, H5769, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166

Uses:

- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 5:10-11](#)

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- 1 Timothy 06:9-10
- **3 John 01:9-10**
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:1-3](#)
- [1 Peter 2:11-12](#)
- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)
- [1 Peter 3:8-9](#)
- [1 Peter 3:10-12](#)
- [1 Peter 4:3-6](#)
- [1 Peter 05 General Notes](#)

evildoer

Definition:

The term “evildoer” is a general reference to people who do sinful and wicked things.

- It can also be a general word for people who do not obey God.
- This term could be translated using the word for “evil” or “wicked,” with the word for “doing” or “making” or “causing” something.

(See also: [evil](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 02:13-17](#)
- [Isaiah 09:16-17](#)
- [Luke 13:25-27](#)
- [Malachi 03:13-15](#)
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H6213, H6466, H7451, H7489, G93, G458, G2038, G2040 , G2555

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)
- [1 Peter 3:15-17](#)
- [1 Peter 4:15-16](#)

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:1-2
- Luke 03:18-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:1-4](#)
- [1 Peter 5:12-14](#)

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:13-14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1547, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:11-12](#)

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:10-12](#)

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:18-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:6-7
- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 5:8-9

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:9
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Genesis 24:49
- Isaiah 01:26
- Joshua 02:14
- Luke 16:10-12
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Psalm 012:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [08:05](#) Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- [14:12](#) Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- [15:13](#) The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- [17:09](#) David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.

- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, G4103

Uses:

- **1 Peter 4:17-19**
- **1 Peter 5:12-14**

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, **Lord**, **power**, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- **1 John 04:17-18**
- Acts 02:43-45
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Luke 12:4-5
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)
- [1 Peter 3:5-6](#)
- [1 Peter 3:13-14](#)

fire

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:6-8
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:5-7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:6-7](#)

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- Ephesians 06:12-13
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Genesis 02:24-25
- John 01:14-15
- Matthew 16:17-18
- Romans 08:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:24-25
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:1-2

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: goat, ox, pig, [sheep](#),)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30-32
- Matthew 26:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:1-4](#)

fool, fools, foolish, folly**Definition:**

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:16-18
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:1-3
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 25:7-9
- Proverbs 13:15-16
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:18-19
- 1 Peter 2:13-17

foreigner, foreign, alien

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17-18
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:24-27
- Luke 17:17-19
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)
- [1 Peter 2:11-12](#)

foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

The terms “foreknew” and “foreknowledge” come from the verb, “foreknow” which means to know something before it happens.

- God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
- This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “foreknew” could also be translated as, “knew before” or “knew ahead of time” or “knew beforehand” or “already knew.”
- The term “foreknowledge” could be translated as, “knowing before” or “knowing ahead of time” or “already knowing” or “knowing in advance.”

(See also: [know](#), [predestine](#))

Bible References:

- Romans 08:28-30
- Romans 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4267, G4268

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, [everlasting](#), reign)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Exodus 15:17-18
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5705, H5331, H5703, H5769, H5865, H5957, G165, G166, G1336

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:24-25
- 1 Peter 4:10-11
- 1 Peter 5:10-11

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: [cornerstone](#), [create](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:28-30
- Matthew 13:34-35
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H803, H808, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H6884, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:20-21](#)

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- Galatians 05:1-2
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G572, G629, G630, G859, G558, G572, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)

Galatia

Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
- The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called “Galatians.”
- One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
- The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asia](#), [believer](#), [Cilicia](#), [good news](#), [Paul](#), [works](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
- [1 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- 2 Timothy 04:9-10
- Acts 16:6-8
- Galatians 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

Gentile, Gentiles

Facts:

The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

- In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
- Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God’s people.
- The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
- Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”
- Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:13-16
- Acts 14:5-7
- Galatians 02:15-16
- Luke 02:30-32
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 06:5-7
- Romans 11:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:11-12](#)
- [1 Peter 4:3-6](#)

gift, gifts

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:1-3
- 2 Samuel 11:6-8
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 11:17-18
- Acts 24:17-19
- James 01:17-18
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23-24
- Matthew 08:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:7](#)
- [1 Peter 4:10-11](#)

gird

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: [loins](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:13-14](#)
- Job 38:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:13-14](#)

glorify, glorifies

Definition:

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means “to give glory to.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: exalt, [glory](#), [obey](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- [1 Peter 04:15-16](#)
- Acts 03:13-14
- John 12:27-29
- Luke 18:42-43
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)
- Romans 08:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3513, H6286, G1392, G1740, G4888

Uses:

- [1 Peter 4:10-11](#)
- [1 Peter 4:15-16](#)

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: [glorify](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:5-6
- Acts 07:1-3
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Isaiah 35:1-2
- James 02:1-4
- Luke 02:8-9
- Numbers 14:9-10
- [Philippians 02:14-16](#)
- Philippians 04:18-20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the glory of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's glory if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3519, H3520, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:6-7
- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:11-12
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 1:24-25
- 1 Peter 4:10-11
- 1 Peter 4:12-14
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:10-11

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [create](#), false god, [God the Father](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [idol](#), Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Deuteronomy 29:14-16](#)
- [Ezra 03:1-2](#)

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- 1 Peter 3:3-4
- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 1 Peter 4:3-6
- 1 Peter 4:10-11
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:10-11

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ancestor](#), [God](#), [heaven](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- [1 John 02:1-3](#)
- [1 John 02:22-23](#)
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Matthew 23:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [24:09](#) There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.

- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:1-2**
- **1 Peter 1:15-17**

godly, godliness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [ungodly](#), [unrighteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:6-8
- 2 Timothy 03:10-13
- Acts 03:11-12
- Hebrews 11:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H2623, G516, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

Uses:

- [1 Peter 03 General Notes](#)

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, [silver](#), tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:6-7](#)
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:14-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Daniel 02:31-33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:6-7](#)
- [1 Peter 1:18-19](#)
- [1 Peter 3:3-4](#)

good news, gospel

Definition:

The term “gospel” literally means “good news” and refers to a message or announcement that tells people something that benefits them and makes them glad.

- In the Bible, this term usually refers to the message about God’s salvation for people through Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross.
- In most English Bibles, “good news” is usually translated as “gospel” and is also used in phrases such as, the “gospel of Jesus Christ,” the “gospel of God” and the “gospel of the kingdom.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways to translate this term could include, “good message” or “good announcement” or “God’s message of salvation” or “the good things God teaches about Jesus.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase, “good news of” could include, “good news/message about” or “good message from” or “the good things God tells us about” or “what God says about how he saves people.”

(See also: kingdom, [sacrifice](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Acts 08:25
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Galatians 01:6-7
- Luke 08:1-3
- Mark 01:14-15
- Philippians 02:22-24
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:06** The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some **good news** for you. The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”
- **26:03** Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim **good news** to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed. This is the year of the Lord’s favor.”
- **45:10** Philip also used other Scriptures to tell him the **good news of Jesus**.
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to preach the **good news about Jesus** in many other places.

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend Silas went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the **good news about Jesus**.
- **47:13** The **good news about Jesus** kept spreading, and the Church kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the **good news about Jesus** the Messiah.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the **good news** about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."
- **50:03** Before he returned to heaven, Jesus told Christians to proclaim the **good news** to people who have never heard it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2097, G2098, G4283

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:11-12**
- **1 Peter 1:24-25**
- **1 Peter 4:3-6**
- **1 Peter 4:17-19**

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), [profit](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Genesis 02:9-10
- Genesis 02:15-17
- James 03:13-14
- Romans 02:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** ”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** ”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

Uses:

- **1 Peter 2:13-17**
- **1 Peter 3:5-6**
- **1 Peter 3:10-12**
- **1 Peter 3:13-14**

governor, govern, proconsul, government

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22-24
- Acts 26:30-32
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:16-18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 06:8-9
- Acts 14:3-4
- Colossians 04:5-6
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:6-7
- John 01:16-18
- Philippians 04:21-23
- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 1 Peter 5:10-11

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: [metonymy](#))
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Acts 08:14-17
- Acts 11:19-21
- Genesis 09:5-7
- Genesis 14:19-20
- John 03:34-36
- Mark 07:31-32
- Matthew 06:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:5-7](#)

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means” he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in “this gray head,” referring to an elderly person, or as in “the head of Joseph,” which refers to Joseph. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22

- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:7-8

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:14-16
- Acts 08:6-8
- Luke 05:12-13
- Luke 06:17-19
- Luke 08:43-44
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. ***21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. ***26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” ***26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. ***32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” ***44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. ***44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.” ***49:02**] Jesus did many

miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:24-25](#)

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- **1 John 03:16-18**
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:20-23
- Acts 15:7-9
- Luke 08:14-15
- Mark 02:5-7
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 22:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 3:3-4
- 1 Peter 3:15-17

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:16-18
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- John 03:12-13
- John 03:27-28
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:3-5**
- **1 Peter 1:11-12**
- **1 Peter 3:21-22**

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), [God the Father](#), [Son of God](#), [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:14-17
- Galatians 05:25-26
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:1-2**
- **1 Peter 1:11-12**
- **1 Peter 3:18-20**
- **1 Peter 4:12-14**

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 07:33-34
- Colossians 01:21-23
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 07:6
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G3741, G3742,

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:15-17**
- **1 Peter 2:4-5**
- **1 Peter 2:9-10**
- **1 Peter 3:5-6**
- **1 Peter 3:15-17**

honor, honors, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:15-17
- John 04:43-45
- John 12:25-26
- Mark 06:4-6
- Matthew 15:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:6-7](#)
- [1 Peter 2:7-8](#)
- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)
- [1 Peter 3:7](#)

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, [household](#), kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:47-50
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 41:39-41
- Luke 08:38-39
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 15:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:4-5

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 34:18-19
- John 04:53-54
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 10:34-36
- Philippians 04:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 4:17-19](#)

humble, humbles, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- James 01:19-21
- James 03:13-14
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 14:10-11
- Luke 18:13-14
- Matthew 18:4-6
- Matthew 23:11-12

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:8-9](#)
- [1 Peter 5:5-7](#)

hypocrite, hypocrites, hypocrisy

Definition:

The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn’t admit his own faults.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite’s actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:13-14
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15-16
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H120, H2611, H2612, G505, G5272, G5273

Uses:

- **1 Peter 2:1-3**

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: false god, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 15:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Psalm 031:5-7
- Romans 02:21-22

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:05** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.” ***13:12** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it! ***14:03** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.” ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice. ***19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 4:3-6

in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

Definition:

The phrase “in Christ” and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include “in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ.”
- Possible meanings for the term “in Christ” could include “because you belong to Christ” or “through the relationship you have with Christ” or “based on your faith in Christ.”
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word “in” belongs with the verb. For example, “share in Christ” means to “share in” the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To “glory in” Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To “believe in” Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “in Christ” and “in the Lord” (and related phrases) could include:
- “who belong to Christ”
- “because you believe in Christ”
- “because Christ has saved us”
- “in service to the Lord”
- “relying on the Lord”
- “because of what the Lord has done.”
- People who “believe in” Christ or who “have faith in” Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like “believe in” or “share in” or “trust in.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [Lord](#), [Jesus](#), [believe](#), [faith](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:4-6](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:16-17](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:1-2](#)
- [Galatians 01:21-24](#)
- [Galatians 02:17-19](#)
- [Philemon 01:4-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

- Romans 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

Uses:

- 1 Peter 5:12-14

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- **1 Peter 01:3-5**
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:3-5**
- **1 Peter 3:8-9**

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), [God the Father](#), high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- [1 John 02:1-3](#)
- [1 John 04:15-16](#)
- 1 Timothy 01:1-2
- [2 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 02:22-24
- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 10:36-38
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Luke 24:19-20

- Matthew 01:20-21
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:08** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 3:21-22

- **1 Peter 4:10-11**

John Mark

Facts:

John Mark, also known as “Mark,” was one of the men who traveled with Paul on his missionary journeys. He is most likely the author of the Gospel of Mark.

- John Mark accompanied his cousin Barnabas and Paul on their first missionary journey.
- When Peter was put in prison in Jerusalem, the believers there were praying for him at John Mark’s mother’s house.
- Mark was not an apostle, but was taught by both Paul and Peter and worked together with them in ministry.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Barnabas, Paul)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:11-13
- Acts 12:24-25
- Acts 13:4-5
- Acts 13:13-15
- Acts 15:36-38
- Acts 15:39-41
- Colossians 04:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:12-14](#)

joy, joyful

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

(See also: [rejoice](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- James 01:1-3
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Nehemiah 08:9-10
- Philemon 01:4-7
- Psalm 048:1-3
- Romans 15:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [33:07](#) “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with **joy**.”

- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2304, H2305, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5970, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2167, G2744, G3685, G4640, G5463, G5479

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:8-10**

judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, **just**, law, law)

Bible References:

- **1 John 04:17-18**
- 1 Kings 03:7-9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:13-15
- James 02:1-4
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:15-17**
- **1 Peter 2:21-23**
- **1 Peter 4:3-6**
- **1 Peter 4:17-19**

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [righteous](#), upright)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- Acts 28:3-4
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- Luke 18:3-5
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:39-41
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Micah 03:8
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3477, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

Uses:

- **1 Peter 2:21-23**

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- 2 Samuel 05:3-5
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:21-22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:33-35
- Matthew 14:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression “to kiss someone farewell” means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word “kiss” is used to mean “say goodbye to.” When Elisha said to Elijah, “Let me first go and kiss my father and mother,” he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11-12
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Genesis 45:14-15
- Genesis 48:8-10
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 26:47-48

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:12-14](#)

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: law, [reveal](#), [understand](#), wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46-47
- 2 Corinthians 02:14-15
- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5

- Luke 01:76-77

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:11-12

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:18-20
- John 01:29-31
- John 01:35-36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3-4
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" ***11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. ***24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." ***45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word." ***48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. ***48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:18-19**

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, [judge](#), [turn](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 03:3-4](#)
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 01:1-3
- Isaiah 02:1-2
- James 05:1-3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 04:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:3-5](#)
- [1 Peter 1:20-21](#)

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- Acts 10:42-43
- Genesis 02:7-8
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Hebrews 10:19-22
- Jeremiah 44:1-3
- John 01:4-5
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 12:22-23
- Matthew 07:13-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:22-23](#)
- [1 Peter 2:4-5](#)
- [1 Peter 2:24-25](#)
- [1 Peter 3:7](#)
- [1 Peter 4:1-2](#)
- [1 Peter 4:3-6](#)

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [2 Corinthians 04:5-6](#)
- [Acts 26:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:9-10](#)

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- [Revelation 05:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:8-9](#)

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, [gird](#), offspring)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:13-14](#)
- 2 Chronicles 06:7-9
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34-36
- Job 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:13-14](#)

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. It is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Joshua 03:9-11
- [Jude 01:5-6](#)
- Lamentations 02:1-2

- Luke 01:30-33
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Romans 06:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H4756, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:15-17

lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 03:22-25
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 39:1-2
- James 02:1-4
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Luke 16:13
- Philippians 02:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."
*

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- 1 Peter 3:5-6
- 1 Peter 5:1-4

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- 1 Thessalonians 04:9-12
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- John 03:16-18
- Matthew 10:37-39
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:9-11
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [27:02](#) The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- [33:08](#) “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- [36:05](#) As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- [39:10](#) “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- [47:01](#) She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- [48:01](#) When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- [49:03](#) He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- [49:04](#) He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- [49:07](#) Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- [49:09](#) But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- [49:13](#) God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 4:7-9
- 1 Peter 5:12-14

manager, steward

Definition:

The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

- A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
- The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:4-5
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 43:16-17
- Isaiah 55:10-11
- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 16:1-2
- Matthew 20:8-10
- Titus 01:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 4:10-11](#)

meek, meekness

Definition:

The term “meek” describes a person who is gentle, submissive, and willing to suffer injustice. Meekness is the ability to be gentle even when harshness or force might seem appropriate.

- Meekness is often associated with humility.
- This term could also be translated as “gentle” or “mild-mannered” or “sweet-tempered.”
- The term “meekness” could be translated as “gentleness” or “humility.”

(See also: [humble](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:15-17](#)
- 2 Corinthians 10:1-2
- 2 Timothy 02:24-26
- Matthew 05:5-8
- Matthew 11:28-30
- Psalms 037:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:15-17](#)

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), forgive)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:12-14](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 19:16-17](#)
- [Hebrews 10:28-29](#)
- [James 02:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 09:27-28](#)
- [Philippians 02:25-27](#)
- [Psalms 041:4-6](#)
- [Romans 12:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.

- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:3-5**
- **1 Peter 2:9-10**

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22-25
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- Luke 10:25-28
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:28-30
- Matthew 22:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:13-14](#)
- [1 Peter 4:7-9](#)

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:19-21](#)
- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 09:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 12:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 35:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Uses:

- 1 Peter 4:12-14
- 1 Peter 4:15-16

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, [Babylon](#), Canaan, [Gentile](#), Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:5-7
- Acts 13:19-20
- Acts 17:26-27
- Acts 26:4-5
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:9-10](#)

Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: descendant, [ark](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:7-8
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37-39

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **03:04** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **03:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, **disobey**, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:22-25
- James 02:10-11
- Luke 06:46-48
- Matthew 07:26-27
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** ”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 3:5-6
- 1 Peter 4:17-19

patient, patience

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: [endure](#), forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:18-20](#)
- [2 Peter 03:8-9](#)
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- [Revelation 02:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26-28
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Luke 07:48-50
- Luke 12:51-53
- Mark 04:38-39
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 10:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

***15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. *50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 5:12-14

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

Uses:

- [1 Peter 02 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 2:9-10](#)

perfect

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:1-3
- James 03:1-2
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H998, H1584, H1585, H3632, H3634, H4357, H4359, H4512, H8003, H8502, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G195, G197, G199, G739, G1295, G2005, G2675, G2676, G2677, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5052

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:10-11](#)

perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:22-23](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:16-17](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:18-20](#)
- [Psalms 049:18-20](#)
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 13:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:3-5](#)
- [1 Peter 1:18-19](#)
- [1 Peter 1:22-23](#)

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: disciple, [apostle](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:11-12
- Luke 22:56-58
- Mark 03:13-16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14-15
- Matthew 14:28-30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

***28:09 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"

***29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?" ***31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water."

Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!" ***36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him. ***38:09 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!"

Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."

***38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest. ***43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."

***44:08 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:1-2**

Pontus

Facts:

Pontus was a Roman province during the time of the Roman Empire and the early Church. It was located along the southern coast of the Black Sea, in the northern part of what is now the country of Turkey.

- As recorded in the book of Acts, people from the province of Pontus were in Jerusalem when the Holy Spirit first came to the apostles on the Day of Pentecost.
- A believer named Aquila was from Pontus.
- When Peter was writing to Christians who were scattered into different regions, Pontus was one of the regions he mentioned.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aquila, Pentecost)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- Acts 02:8-11

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:43-45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37

- Matthew 13:44-46

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:9-10

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:4-5
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 01:16-17
- Luke 04:14-15
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Philippians 03:20-21
- Psalm 080:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:3-5**
- **1 Peter 3:21-22**
- **1 Peter 4:10-11**

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:3-4
- Acts 02:46-47
- Acts 13:48-49
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46-47
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. ***17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. ***22:07** Zechariah said, ”**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! ***43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. ***47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:6-7
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 2:13-17

pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:8-10
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:23-26
- Colossians 04:2-4
- John 17:9-11
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. ***19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” ***21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. ***38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. ***43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. ***49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 3:7
- 1 Peter 4:7-9

preach

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”

(See also: [good news](#), [Jesus](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25-27
- Luke 04:42-44
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

***24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!” ***30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages. ***38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there. ***45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went. ***45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved. ***46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!” ***46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places. ***47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus. ***50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:3-6

precious

Facts:

The term “precious” describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term “precious stones” or “precious jewels” refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called “precious metals.”
- Yahweh says that his people are “precious” in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God’s sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as “valuable” or “very dear” or “cherished” or “highly valued.”

(See also: [gold](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:6-7](#)
- [1 Peter 3:3-4](#)

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:9-10

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:4-5
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Luke 12:57-59
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:16-17
- Matthew 05:25-26
- Matthew 14:3-5
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:24-26
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:22-23

- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:8-10**
- **1 Peter 1:11-12**

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, **humble**, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12-14
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19-20
- Luke 01:50-51

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said. ***34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:9-10](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Genesis 04:13-15](#)
- [Luke 23:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 25:44-46](#)

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. ***16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. ***19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. ***48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. ***48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. ***49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. *49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 2:18-20

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:5-8
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:8-10
- Luke 02:22-24
- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 2:1-3

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:20-21**

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:9-10](#)
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 04:1-2
- Acts 08:14-17
- Jeremiah 32:33-35
- Luke 09:5-6
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

Uses:

- **1 Peter 2:9-10**
- **1 Peter 4:10-11**

redeem, redeems, redemption, redeemer

Definition:

To “redeem” and “redemption” refer to buy back something or someone that was previously owned or held captive. “Redemption” is the action of doing that. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things.
- For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “the buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these terms. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary.

(See also: [free](#), ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:15-17
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Luke 02:36-38
- Ruth 02:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085, H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:18-19

reject

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: command, [disobey](#), [obey](#), stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:4-5](#)
- [1 Peter 2:7-8](#)

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:15-18
- Acts 16:32-34
- John 03:29-30
- Luke 15:6-7
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Philippians 04:10-13
- Romans 05:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 4:12-14](#)

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:12-14
- [1 Peter 03:21-22](#)
- Hebrews 11:35-38
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27-28
- Luke 20:34-36
- Matthew 22:23-24
- Matthew 22:29-30
- Philippians 03:8-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21:14](#) Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- [37:05](#) Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 3:21-22

reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: [good news](#), [good news](#), dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:3-5
- Galatians 01:11-12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26-27
- Philippians 03:15-16
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:11-12
- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 4:12-14
- 1 Peter 5:1-4

reverence, revere**Definition:**

The term “reverence” refers to feelings of profound, deep respect for someone or something. “Revere” someone or something is to show reverence towards that person or thing.

- Feelings of reverence can be seen in actions that honor the person who is revered.
- The fear of the Lord is an inner reverence that manifests itself in obedience to God’s commandments.
- This term could also be translated as “fear and honor” or “sincere respect.”

(See also: [fear](#), [honor](#), [obey](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:15-17](#)
- [Hebrews 11:7](#)
- [Isaiah 44:17](#)
- [Psalms 005:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:15-17](#)

reward

Definition:

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. “To reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- “To reward” someone could be translated by “to repay” or “to punish” or “to give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- Isaiah 40:9-10
- Luke 06:35-36
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- [Revelation 11:18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4864, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8011, H8021, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

Uses:

- [1 Peter 05 General Notes](#)

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:32-33
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Galatians 02:9-10
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- Lamentations 02:3-4

- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Psalms 044:3-4
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

Uses:

- 1 Peter 3:21-22

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [holy](#), [evil](#), [just](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 03:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- [Isaiah 48:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 037:28-30](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3072, H3477, H4334, H4339, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:24-25](#)
- [1 Peter 3:10-12](#)
- [1 Peter 3:13-14](#)
- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)
- [1 Peter 4:17-19](#)

royal

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 07:12-13
- Genesis 49:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:9-10](#)

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action “to sacrifice” could be translated as “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, **priest**, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:6-8
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 21:25-26
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12-14
- Matthew 05:23-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- **1 Peter 2:4-5**

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- Genesis 49:16-18
- Luke 02:30-32
- Philippians 01:28-30
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)
- Romans 01:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H8668, G4991, G4992

Uses:

- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1:3-5](#)
- [1 Peter 1:8-10](#)
- [1 Peter 2:1-3](#)

sanctify, sanctifies, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, [holy](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13-15
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G37, G38

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)

Sarah, Sarai

Facts:

- Sarah was Abraham's wife.
- Her name was originally "Sarai," but God changed it to "Sarah."
- Sarah gave birth to Isaac, the son God had promised to give her and Abraham.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Isaac)

Bible References:

- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 17:15-16
- Genesis 25:9-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:01** "So Abram's wife, **Sarai**, said to him, "Since God has not allowed me to have children and now I am too old to have children, here is my servant, Hagar. Marry her also so she can have a child for me." ***05:04** "Your wife, **Sarai**, will have a son—he will be the son of promise." ***05:04** "God also changed **Sarai's** name to **Sarah**, which means "princess." ***05:05** "About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and **Sarah** was 90, **Sarah** gave birth to Abraham's son. They named him Isaac as God had told them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:5-6](#)

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: demon, [evil](#), kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:7-8](#)
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:14-16
- Acts 13:9-10
- Job 01:6-8
- Mark 08:33-34
- Zechariah 03:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."

- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."
- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

Uses:

- **1 Peter 5:8-9**

save, saves, saved, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: cross, deliver, [punish](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Acts 02:20-21
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Luke 08:36-37
- Micah 06:3-5
- Psalm 080:1-3
- Romans 10:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.

- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G5198

Uses:

- **1 Peter 3:18-20**
- **1 Peter 3:21-22**
- **1 Peter 4:17-19**

seed, semen

Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called semen.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:30-32
- Genesis 01:11-13
- Jeremiah 02:20-22
- Matthew 13:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H2234, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:22-23](#)

seek, sought

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or “to do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:13-14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:5-6
- Luke 11:9-10
- Psalms 027:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:10-12](#)

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obey his master.

(See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [serve](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." ***29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" ***35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)
- [1 Peter 2:18-20](#)

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: covenant, law, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:11-12
- 1 Peter 4:10-11
- 1 Peter 5:5-7

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 03:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12-13
- Numbers 03:11-13
- Philippians 01:1-2
- Romans 01:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:15-17](#)

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: false god, [humble](#), humiliate, Isaiah, repent, [sin](#), worship)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:15-17](#)
- 2 Kings 02:17-18
- 2 Samuel 13:13-14
- Luke 20:11-12
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:6](#)
- [1 Peter 3:15-17](#)
- [1 Peter 4:15-16](#)

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32-33
- Genesis 30:31-32
- John 02:13-14
- Luke 15:3-5
- Mark 06:33-34
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 10:5-7
- Matthew 12:11-12
- Matthew 25:31-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:24-25](#)

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression “to shepherd” could be translated as “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- **1 Peter 2:24-25**
- **1 Peter 5:1-4**

Silas, Silvanus

Facts:

Silas was a leader among the believers in Jerusalem.

- The elders of the church in Jerusalem appointed Silas to go with Paul and Barnabas to take a letter to the city of Antioch.
- Silas later traveled with Paul to other cities to teach people about Jesus.
- Paul and Silas were put in jail in the city of Philippi. They sang praises to God while they were there and God released them from the jail. The jailer became a Christian as a result of their testimony.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Antioch, Barnabas, Jerusalem, Paul, Philippi, [prison](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:12-14](#)
- 1 Thessalonians 01:1
- 2 Thessalonians 01:1-2
- Acts 15:22-23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **47:01** One day, Paul and his friend **Silas** went to the town of Philippi to proclaim the good news about Jesus.
- **47:02** She (Lydia) invited Paul and **Silas** to stay at her house, so they stayed with her and her family.
- **47:03** Paul and **Silas** often met with people at the place of prayer.
- **47:07** So the owners of the slave girl took Paul and **Silas** to the Roman authorities, who beat them and threw them into jail.
- **47:08** They put Paul and **Silas** in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet.
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and **Silas** and asked, “What must I do to be saved?”
- **47:13** The next day the leaders of the city released Paul and **Silas** from prison and asked them to leave Philippi. Paul and **Silas** visited Lydia and some other friends and then left the city.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:12-14](#)

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:4-6
- Matthew 26:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:18-19](#)

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- 1 Peter 2:24-25
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 04 General Notes
- 1 Peter 4:1-2
- 1 Peter 4:7-9
- 1 Peter 4:17-19

slander, slanderer

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: blasphemy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:12-13
- 1 Timothy 03:11-13
- 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
- Mark 07:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:1-3](#)

son, sons**Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- “Son” was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes “sons of God” was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning “person having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: Azariah, descendant, [ancestor](#), firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Uses:

- **1 Peter 5:12-14**

soul, souls

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:7-9](#)
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:40-42
- Genesis 49:5-6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:19-21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:46-47
- Matthew 22:37-38
- Psalms 019:7-8
- [Revelation 20:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 2:24-25
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:17-19

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 3:3-4
- 1 Peter 4:3-6

strength, strengthen

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
- “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
- “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
- “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
- “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
- “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
- “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
- “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
- “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
- “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
- “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
- “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- [2 Peter 02:10-11](#)

- Luke 10:25-28
- Psalm 021:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 4:10-11
- 1 Peter 5:10-11

stumble

Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, “to stumble” can mean “to sin” or “to falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: [believe](#), [persecute](#), [sin](#), [stumbling block](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 02:7-8](#)
- Hosea 04:4-5
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:7-8](#)

subject, be subject to, in subjection to

Facts:

A person is the “subject” of another person if the second person rules over the first. To “be subject to” is to “obey” or to “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: [submit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:14-16
- 1 Kings 04:5-6
- [1 Peter 02:18-20](#)
- Hebrews 02:5-6
- Proverbs 12:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:18-20](#)

submit, in submission

Definition:

To “submit” usually means to voluntarily place oneself under the authority of a person or government.

- The Bible tells believers in Jesus to submit to God and other authorities in their lives.
- The instruction to “submit to one another” means to humbly accept correction and to focus on the needs of others rather than on our own needs.
- To “live in submission to” means to put oneself under the authority of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The command “submit to” could be translated as “put yourself under the authority of” or “follow the leadership of” or “humbly honor and respect”
- The term “submission” could be translated as “obedience” or “the following of authority.”
- The phrase “live in submission to” could be translated as “be obedient to” or “put oneself under the authority of.”
- The phrase “be in submission” could be translated as “humbly accept authority.”

(See also: [subject](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 14:34-36
- [1 Peter 03:1-2](#)
- Hebrews 13:15-17
- Luke 10:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:1-2](#)
- [1 Peter 3:21-22](#)
- [1 Peter 5:5-7](#)

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21-23
- Psalms 022:24-25
- **Revelation 01:9-11**
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:11-12**
- **1 Peter 2:18-20**
- **1 Peter 2:21-23**
- **1 Peter 3:13-14**
- **1 Peter 4:1-2**
- **1 Peter 4:12-14**
- **1 Peter 5:1-4**
- **1 Peter 5:8-9**
- **1 Peter 5:10-11**

test, tests, tested

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:19-22](#)
- [Acts 15:10-11](#)
- [Genesis 22:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 07:13-15](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Lamentations 03:40-43](#)
- [Malachi 03:10-12](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 026:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:6-7
- 1 Peter 4:12-14

testimony, testify

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, [prophet](#), [witness](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- [3 John 01:11-12](#)
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44-46
- John 03:31-33
- Mark 01:43-44
- Matthew 26:59-61
- Micah 06:3-5
- [Revelation 12:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1263, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:12-14](#)

tongue

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongue” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [joy](#), [praise](#), [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:9-11
- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- 2 Samuel 23:1-2
- Acts 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- Philippians 02:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:10-12](#)

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- Luke 24:38-40
- Matthew 24:6-8
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:6-7

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:4-6
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:17-18
- James 03:13-14
- James 05:19-20

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. ***31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." ***39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 5:12-14

turn, turn away, turn back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [idol](#), leprosy, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- Acts 07:41-42

- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H4878, H5186, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5437, H5472, H5472, H5493, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, H8447, G344, G387, G387, G402, G576, G654, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1624, G1994, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3344, G3346, G3346, G4762, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

Uses:

- 1 Peter 3:10-12

understand, understanding

Definition:

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: [believe](#), [know](#), wise)

Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:45-47
- Luke 08:9-10
- Matthew 13:10-12
- Matthew 13:13-14
- Proverbs 03:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:7](#)

ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “ungodly” could be translated as “displeasing to God” or “immoral” or “disobeying God.”
- The terms “godless” and “godlessness” literally mean that the people are “without God” or “having no thought of God” or “acting in a way that does not acknowledge God.”
- Other ways to translate “ungodliness” or “godlessness” could be “wickedness” or “evil” or “rebellion against God”.

(See also: [godly](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 04:17-19](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:9-11](#)
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- [Job 27:8-10](#)
- [Jude 01:14-16](#)
- [Proverbs 11:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G763, G764, G765

Uses:

- [1 Peter 04 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 4:17-19](#)

unjust, unjustly, injustice

Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), [unrighteous](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Hebrews 06:9-10
- Luke 18:6-8
- Matthew 05:43-45

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H2555, H5765, H5766, H5767, H8636, G91, G93, G94

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:18-20](#)

unrighteous, unrighteousness

Definition:

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”

(See also: [righteous](#), [unjust](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 John 05:16-17](#)
- [1 Peter 03:18-20](#)
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Romans 01:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H2555, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6664, G93, G94, G458

Uses:

- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21-22
- John 04:9-10
- John 04:13-14
- John 04:15-16
- Matthew 14:28-30

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- 1 Peter 3:18-20

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term “to will” means “to determine” or “to desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:13-17](#)
- [1 Peter 4:1-2](#)
- [1 Peter 4:17-19](#)

witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [judge](#), [true](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:6-8](#)
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- Acts 13:30-31
- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- John 01:6-8
- Romans 01:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, G267, G1263, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

Uses:

- **1 Peter 5:1-4**

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [word](#), Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25

- Genesis 15:1-3
- James 02:8-9
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- John 05:39-40
- Luke 08:11-13
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

Uses:

- **1 Peter 1:22-23**
- **1 Peter 2:6**

word, words

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Colossians 04:2-4
- James 01:17-18
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- John 01:1-3
- John 01:14-15
- Luke 08:14-15
- Matthew 02:7-8
- Matthew 07:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:7-8](#)
- [1 Peter 3:1-2](#)

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: fruit, [Holy Spirit](#), miracle)

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:11-12](#)
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- [1 Peter 01 General Notes](#)
- [1 Peter 1:15-17](#)
- [1 Peter 2:11-12](#)

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, [heaven](#), Rome, [ungodly](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [1 John 04:4-6](#)
- [1 John 05:4-5](#)
- John 01:29-31
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 5:8-9

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:13-15](#)
- Acts 13:28-29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:24-25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:11-13
- Matthew 04:5-6
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:15-17](#)

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), David, Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- Amos 01:1-2
- Jeremiah 51:34-35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26-27

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [1 Peter 2:6](#)

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
 - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
 - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
 - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
 - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
 - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - Today the people in this house have been saved...
 - Today God has saved the people in this house...
 - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 3:1-2
- 1 Peter 3:7
- 1 Peter 3:7
- 1 Peter 3:13-14
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- 1 Peter 5:1-4

Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:6-7
- 1 Peter 1:11-12
- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 1:15-17
- 1 Peter 1:18-19
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 1:24-25
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 2:9-10
- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- 1 Peter 2:21-23

- 1 Peter 2:24-25
- 1 Peter 3:1-2
- 1 Peter 3:7
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 3:13-14
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:3-6
- 1 Peter 4:3-6
- 1 Peter 4:10-11
- 1 Peter 4:12-14
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:12-14

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
 - **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
 - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
 - ◇ Or:
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
 - **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
 - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.
 - **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
 - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
 - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:6
- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 3:7
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:21-22
- 1 Peter 4:10-11

Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
 - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
 - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
 - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
 - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
 - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
 - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:18-19
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:12-14
- 1 Peter 4:17-19

Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

Definition

... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?”
(Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
 - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
 - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
 - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

Uses:

- **1 Peter 4:3-6**

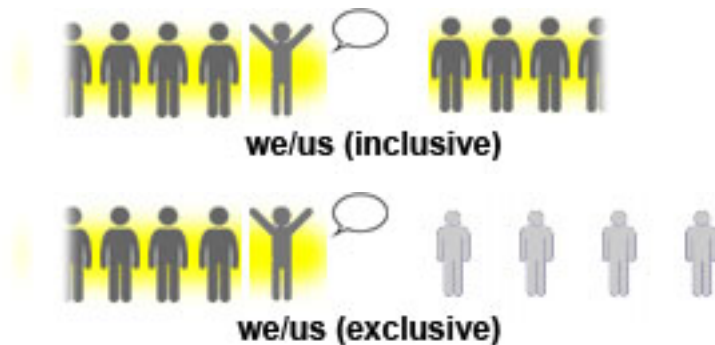
Exclusive and Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we:” an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULB)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Uses:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)

Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

Uses:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
 - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
 - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - ... a young man named Paul¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
 - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

- ◇ ^[1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.
- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
 - It came about in Iconium that Paul¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- **Introduction to 1 Peter**

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
 - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
 - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
 - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
 - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
 - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
 - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 1:13-14

- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 3:1-2
- 1 Peter 4:7-9
- 1 Peter 5:8-9

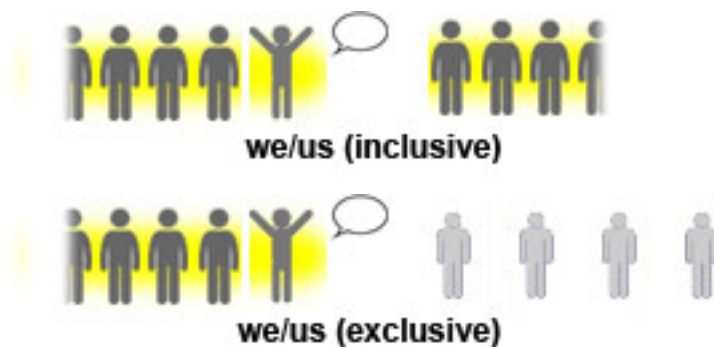
Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive “we”?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:3-5](#)
- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)

Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
- **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
- **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

Uses:

- 1 Peter 4:3-6

Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’ where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, ”Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
 - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
 - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
 - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
 - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
 - I will make you become people who gather men.
 - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:1-2
- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:3-5
- 1 Peter 1:6-7
- 1 Peter 1:13-14
- 1 Peter 1:15-17
- 1 Peter 1:20-21
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 02 General Notes
- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:1-3
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:6
- 1 Peter 2:6
- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 2:9-10
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 2:11-12
- 1 Peter 2:13-17
- 1 Peter 2:21-23
- 1 Peter 2:24-25
- 1 Peter 3:3-4
- 1 Peter 3:3-4
- 1 Peter 3:5-6
- 1 Peter 3:7

- 1 Peter 3:7
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 3:8-9
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:1-2
- 1 Peter 4:7-9
- 1 Peter 4:7-9
- 1 Peter 4:12-14
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- 1 Peter 05 General Notes
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:1-4
- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 1 Peter 5:8-9
- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- 1 Peter 5:12-14
- 1 Peter 5:12-14

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
 - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
 - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
 - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
 - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#).### Uses:

- [1 Peter 1:1-2](#)
- [1 Peter 1:18-19](#)
- [1 Peter 1:22-23](#)
- [1 Peter 1:24-25](#)
- [1 Peter 2:4-5](#)
- [1 Peter 2:7-8](#)
- [1 Peter 2:11-12](#)
- [1 Peter 2:21-23](#)
- [1 Peter 2:24-25](#)
- [1 Peter 2:24-25](#)
- [1 Peter 3:1-2](#)
- [1 Peter 3:3-4](#)
- [1 Peter 3:10-12](#)
- [1 Peter 3:18-20](#)
- [1 Peter 4:12-14](#)
- [1 Peter 5:1-4](#)
- [1 Peter 5:5-7](#)
- [1 Peter 5:8-9](#)
- [1 Peter 5:12-14](#)

Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
 - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
 - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
 - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
 - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
 - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
 - “All you have done is lie to me.”
 - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:7-8
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:13-14
- 1 Peter 4:7-9
- 1 Peter 4:12-14

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:7-9

Reflexive Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **Reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves. Other languages may have other ways to show this.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
 - **If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”
 - **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
 - **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)
 - “It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”
 - **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)
 - “It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)
 - “When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.
- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)
 - “He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in it’s own place.”

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:24-25

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
 - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
 - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
 - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
 - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - You should not insult God's high priest!
 - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
 - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
 - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- 1 Peter 2:18-20
- 1 Peter 3:13-14
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- 1 Peter 4:17-19

Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
 - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
 - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
 - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:18-19
- 1 Peter 1:24-25
- 1 Peter 1:24-25
- 1 Peter 2:4-5
- 1 Peter 2:24-25
- 1 Peter 5:8-9

Symbolic Language

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things and events. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

Eat this scroll, then go speak to the house of Israel.” (Ezekiel 3:1 ULB)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason this is a translation issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples from the Bible

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. (Daniel 7:7 ULB)

The meaning of the underlined symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be a fourth kingdom on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom ten kings will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings. (Daniel 7:23-24 ULB)

I turned around to see whose voice was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw seven golden lampstands. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a Son of Man, ... He had in his right hand seven stars, and coming out of his mouth was a sharp two-edged sword.... As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches. (Revelation 1:12, 16, 20 ULB)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
 - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB) - People will be able to understand what the symbols mean when they read the explanation in Daniel 7:23-24.
2. Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.
 - **After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.** (Daniel 7:7 ULB)
 - After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal,¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth;² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns.³
 - The footnotes would look like:

- ◇ ^[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.
- ◇ ^[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.
- ◇ ^[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

Uses:

- [1 Peter 5:12-14](#)

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
 - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - ”I exalt the Lord.”
 - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- 1 Peter 1:8-10
- 1 Peter 1:22-23
- 1 Peter 03 General Notes
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:10-12
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 Peter 4:17-19

Textual Variants

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULB have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, and some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULB, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULB based the ULB on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULB may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULB translators included footnotes that tell about some of the differences between them.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULB and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULB. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULB has a footnote about verse 11.

¹⁰See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹¹[¹

[¹ Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULB, but it is marked off with square brackets ([]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

⁵³[Then every man went to his own house.... ¹¹She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”]^[2]

[²The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULB or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULB, which has a footnote about verse 16.

- ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." ¹⁶[1]
 - ^[1]The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses that the ULB does and include the footnote that the ULB provides.
 - ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." ¹⁶[1]
 - ◇ ^[1]The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*
- Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.
 - ¹⁴He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. ¹⁵There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. ¹⁶If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." ^[1]
 - ◇ ^[1]Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

Uses:

- [Introduction to 1 Peter](#)